

AL-BAHER

English

الصف الرابع الابتدائي
First Term



2026

4th
Primary

Contents

Unit (1)	The Five Senses	(8)
Unit (2)	My Community	(37)
Unit (3)	Animals In Our World	(66)
	Review (1)	(96)
Unit (4)	Egypt-My Homeland	(98)
Unit (5)	A Day At Work	(126)
Unit (6)	The Hundred Dresses	(155)
	Review (2)	(169)
	Listening	(171)
	Answers of paragraphs	(174)

Reading and Writing Skills

Reading Skills

مهارات القراءة

How to deal with the "Reading Comprehension" question.

كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

قطعة الفهم هي عبارة عن فقرة يقوم الطالب بقراءتها ثم يجيب عن بعض الأسئلة:

أ- سؤالان اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

(تحديد الفكرة العامة في النص - تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص - توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص)

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

(١) تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص

- This text is about ".....".

Or: The (main idea / general idea) of the text is about ".....".

Or: The text talks about ".....".

(٢) تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص

- The underlined word "....." has the same meaning as ".....".

Or: The underlined word "....." is the opposite of the word ".....".

Or: The underlined pronoun "....." refers to ".....".

Or: The underlined word "....." means ".....".

ب- توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص

- سؤالان بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية.

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تقديم استنتاجات منطقية من النص:

- Infer استنتج

- Mention اذكر

- تلخيص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص.

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

1 How to write a paragraph:

كيف تكتب مقالة إنشائية

- 1 اترك مسافة في بداية السطر الأول تقريبًا 1 سم.
- 2 ابدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
- 3 ضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة خبرية.
- 4 اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
- 5 ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوع بدايات الجمل.
- 6 استخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.
- 7 استخدم جمل بسيطة.
- 8 حسن خطك واترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

2 How to write a blog:

كيف تكتب مدونة

- 1 اكتب تاريخ اليوم في بداية المدونة.
- 2 قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب لموضوع المدونة.
- 3 صف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك .
- 4 صف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
- 5 اكتب بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل (I / me).
- 6 استخدم بعض الصور لتوضيح الفكرة.
- 7 اكتب رأيك في الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه باستخدام (In my opinion) / (I think that).

3 How to write a diary entry:

كيف تكتب مذكرة - يوميات

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1) Write the date. | اكتب التاريخ. |
| 2) Start with "Dear Diary". | ابدأ بـ (Dear Diary). |
| 3) Write about how you felt. | اكتب كيف كان شعورك. |
| 4) Use informal language. | استخدم لغة غير رسمية. |
| 5) Use personal pronouns as "I - me" | استخدم ضمائر شخصية مثل (I - me). |
| 6) Describe the (places - events). | صف (الأماكن والأحداث). |

How to write a sentence

كيف تكتب جملة

Statement

الجملة الخبرية

The sentence order

Subject

فاعل

اسم / ضمير

Verb

فعل

مضارع / ماضي

Complement

تكملة الجملة

اسم / صفة / حال / ظرف

Sarah	→	wakes up	→	early.
They	→	are	→	happy.
The owner	→	is	→	greedy.
We	→	visited	→	our grandparents.
Ali	→	came	→	late.

Note

Subject

قد يكون الفاعل اسم أو ضمير يحل محل الاسم.

- Toka plays tennis.
- She plays tennis.

Imperative

جملّة الأمر

أمر مثبت

نبدأ بمصدر الفعل inf.

- Plant some trees.

أمر منفي

نبدأ ب Don't ثم مصدر الفعل.

- Don't throw trash.

Question

السؤال

Yes / No question

السؤال بمعنى هل ويبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص.

(Do, Does, Did, Is, Are, Was, Were, Can, Could, Will, Would)

ياقي الجملة + فعل + فاعل + فعل مساعد/ ناقص ؟

- Do you like your ship?
- Is Sara kind?
- Can you swim?

Wh- question

السؤال بأداة استفهام

(Who, Where, When, What, Which, Why)

يبدأ بأداة استفهام:

ياقي الجملة + فعل + فاعل + فعل مساعد/ ناقص + أداة استفهام ؟

- What do you do?
- Where does he live?
- What can you see?

Punctuation Marks

Capital letters

A B
C

الحروف الكبيرة

علامات الترقيم

توضع في بداية الجملة / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة

- 1 He is a vet.
- 2 Saturday
- 3 October
- 4 English
- 5 Egyptian
- 6 Ahmed
- 7 Egypt

والضمير (I).

Period (Full Stop)

النقطة



توضع في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

- 1 I see with my eyes.
- 2 Sara eats healthy food.

Question Mark

علامة الاستفهام



توضع في نهاية السؤال.

- 1 What will we learn today?
- 2 Do you like English?

Exclamation Mark

علامة التعجب



توضع في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب.

- 1 What a beautiful day!
- 2 That's fun!

Apostrophe

الفاصلة العليا



توضع مع (s) الملكية.

- 1 We laughed at Goha's clever answer.
- 2 You can't smell the soup for free.

توضع في الاختصارات.

Comma

الفاصلة السفلى



توضع عند كتابة قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

- 1 I bought bread, cheese, sugar and oil.
- 2 Yes, I do. - No, she doesn't.
- 3 Ali likes math, but he isn't good at it.
- 4 Can I use your phone, please?
- 5 Please, open the door.

توضع بعد (Yes / No).

توضع قبل (but).

توضع قبل (please) إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

أو توضع بعدها إذا جاءت في أول الجملة.

Unit 1

The Five Senses

الحواس الخمس



Learning Outcomes

	Ask and answer questions about the importance of senses	اسأل وأجب عن أسئلة حول أهمية الحواس
Speaking	Talk about health habits in pairs	تحدث مع زميلك عن العادات الصحية في ثنائيات
	Deliver a presentation on healthy eating habits	قدّم عرضاً تقديمياً عن عادات الأكل الصحية
Reading	Answer questions about healthy habits	أجب عن أسئلة تتعلق بالعادات الصحية.
	Identify the setting and characters	حدد المكان والشخصيات
	Order daily events using sequence words	رتّب الأحداث اليومية باستخدام كلمات الترتيب
Listening	Identify vocabulary related to the five senses	حدد المفردات المتعلقة بالحواس الخمس
	Answer comprehension questions in a listening dialog	أجب عن أسئلة الفهم في حوار استماعي
	Recognize short and long vowels as in "pen" and "feed"	ميّز الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة كما في «pen» و«feed»
Writing	Use the present simple tense to write meaningful sentences	استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط لكتابة جمل ذات معنى
	Write a daily routine using sequence words	اكتب روتين يومي باستخدام كلمات الترتيب
	Plan a presentation on healthy eating habits	خطط لعرض تقديمي عن عادات الأكل الصحية

Lesson (1) What are the Five Senses?

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

				
taste يتذوق	see يرى	hear يسمع	touch يلمس	smell يشم

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

senses	حواس	hands	أيدي	school garden	حديقة المدرسة
taste	حاسة التذوق	soft	ناعم	the world	العالم
sight	حاسة البصر	hard	صلب / خشن	How many ...?	كم عدد ...؟
hearing	حاسة السمع	smoke	دخان	flowers	زهور
touch	حاسة اللمس	fire	حريق	shapes	أشكال
smell	حاسة الشم	butterfly	فراشة	delicious	لذيذ
tongue	لسان	important	مهم	garden	حديقة
eyes	عيون	amazing	مذهل	colors	ألوان
ears	آذان	voice	صوت «إنسان»		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
taste يتذوق	tasted
touch يلمس	touched
help يساعد	helped
learn يتعلم	learned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
see يرى	saw
hear يسمع	heard
smell يشم	smelt
understand يفهم	understood

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

What else?	وماذا أيضًا؟	learn about	يتعلم عن
talk about	يتحدث عن	stay safe	يبقى آمنًا

Read and learn.



I see with my eyes.



I see colors and shapes with my eyes.



I hear with my ears.



I hear music and voices with my ears.



I smell with my nose.



I smell flowers in the garden with my nose.



I touch with my hands.



I touch soft and hard things with my hands.



I taste with my tongue.



I taste delicious food with my tongue.



Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

"Let's Talk About Our Senses" هيا نتحدث عن حواسنا

Ms. Mona and the students are talking about the five senses.

تتحدث الأستاذة منى والطلاب عن الحواس الخمس.

Ms. Mona Good morning, children! What a beautiful day in the school garden!

صباح الخير، يا أطفال! ياله من يوم جميل في حديقة المدرسة!

Sami Good morning, Ms. Mona! What will we learn today?

صباح الخير، يا أستاذة منى! ماذا سنتعلم اليوم؟

Ms. Mona Today, we'll learn about our amazing senses.

سنتعلم اليوم عن حواسنا المذهلة.

Sami What are senses, Ms. Mona?

وما هي الحواس، يا أستاذة منى؟

Ms. Mona Senses help us understand the world around us—like sight, hearing, and smell.

تساعدنا الحواس على فهم العالم من حولنا—مثل البصر، والسمع، والشم.

Sami I can hear birds singing!

أستطيع سماع تغريد العصافير!

Ms. Mona Yes! That's your sense of hearing. What else can we use?

نعم! هذه هي حاسة السمع لديك. ماذا أيضًا يمكننا أن نستخدم؟

Salma I can smell the flowers and see the colorful butterflies!

أستطيع أن أشم الزهور وأرى الفراشات الملونة!

Ms. Mona Excellent, Salma! Those are your senses of smell and sight. Senses also help us stay safe.

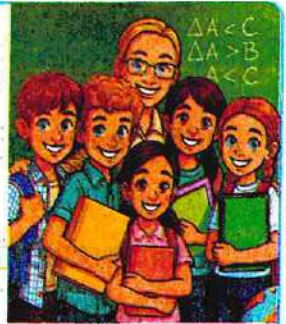
أحسنت، يا سلمى! هاتان هما حاستا الشم والبصر. وتساعدنا الحواس أيضًا على البقاء آمنين.

Sami Ms. Mona, how do our senses help us stay safe?

أستاذة منى، كيف تساعدنا حواسنا على البقاء آمنين؟

Ms. Mona That's a great question, Sami! For example, if we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

هذا سؤال رائع، يا سامي! على سبيل المثال، عندما نشم رائحة الدخان، نعلم أن هناك حريقًا.



Listen again and answer.

استمع مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

1. Where are Ms. Mona and the students?
2. What can Sami hear?

Activities On Lesson 1

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We have senses.
a) fifty b) fifteen c) forty d) five
2. Our senses help us stay
a) awful b) safe c) dangerous d) dirty
3. We can taste ice cream with our
a) eye b) tongue c) nose d) ear
4. We can see with our eyes.
a) boys b) girls c) colors d) tables

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. How senses do we have?
a) long b) much c) often d) many
2. When we see things, we use our sense of
a) hearing b) sight c) smell d) touch
3. I see with my
a) ears b) eyes c) tongue d) nose
4. We delicious food with our tongue.
a) taste b) hear c) see d) smell
5. I can touch soft things with my
a) eyes b) hands c) ears d) tongue
6. We can music with our ears.
a) hear b) see c) smell d) touch
7. I can smell with my
a) hands b) tongue c) nose d) eyes
8. help us understand the world around us.
a) Flowers b) Butterflies c) Voices d) Senses

Lesson (1)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

five - hands - important - tongue - see

Let's talk about our senses. Our senses are very 1) We have 2) senses. We can 3) with our eyes. We can taste with our 4) We smell flowers with our nose.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ms. Mona and the students are talking about the five senses. They are in the school garden. Ms. Mona told the students that senses help us understand the world around us like sight, hearing, and smell. Our senses help us stay safe. For example, if we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The main idea for the text is about
a) hearing b) eating c) reading d) senses
- The students are in the school
a) lab b) garden c) theatre d) ground

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How can our senses help us stay safe?

4. How many senses do we have?

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Our senses

Guiding elements:

(five - understand - smell - tongue)

Lesson (2)

Healthy Habits

Healthy habits

عادات صحية

take a shower	يأخذ دُش / يستحم	brush teeth	يغسل الأسنان بالفرشاة
do exercises	يمارس التمارين	wash face	يغسل وجهه بالماء
eat healthy food	يتناول طعام صحي	go to bed early	ينام مبكراً

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	orange juice	عصير برتقال
dinner	وجبة العشاء	vegetables	خضروات
fresh	طازج	competitions	مسابقات

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
practice	يتمرن practiced
help	يساعد helped
follow	يتبع followed
stay	يظل / يبقى stayed
brush	يغسل بالفرشاة brushed
study	يدرس / يذاكر studied
wash	يغسل washed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
wake up	يستيقظ woke up
eat	يأكل ate
drink	يشرب drank
give	يعطي gave
take	يأخذ took
win	يفوز won
sleep	ينام slept

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

stay strong	يبقى قوياً	make friends	يكون صداقات
plenty of	كثير من / وفرة من	in the morning	في الصباح
feel good	يشعر بالراحة	in the evening	في المساء
her mind stay sharp	يظل عقلها متنبهاً	during break time	أثناء الفسحة
enough sleep	قدر كافٍ من النوم	Next,	التالي،
a 10-year-old girl	بنت عمرها عشر سنوات	After that,	بعد ذلك،

Lesson (2)

Read the text.

اقرأ النص.

My Healthy Day

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good **habits** every day to stay strong and healthy.

سارة فتاة بصحة جيدة تبلغ من العمر عشر سنوات. تتبع كل يوم عادات جيدة لتحافظ على قوتها وصحتها.

In the morning, Sarah wakes up early at 6:00 a.m. She **brushes** her teeth and washes her face.

Next, she does some simple exercises in the garden.

في الصباح، تستيقظ سارة مبكرًا في تمام الساعة السادسة صباحًا. تنظف أسنانها وتغسل وجهها، ثم تمارس بعض التمارين البسيطة في الحديقة.

For **breakfast**, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and brown bread. These foods give her **energy** for the day.

في وجبة الإفطار، تتناول سارة طعامًا صحيًا. تشرب عصير البرتقال وتأكل البيض والخبز الأسمر. تمنحها هذه الأطعمة طاقة لبدء يومها.

At school, Sarah drinks plenty of water between classes. She plays sports with her friends during break time.

في المدرسة، تشرب سارة كميات كثيرة من الماء بين الحصص. وتلعب الرياضة مع صديقاتها أثناء الفسحة.

In the afternoon, Sarah does her homework first. After that, she helps her mother in the garden. They grow fresh vegetables together. For **dinner**, Sarah eats lots of vegetables and fruits. These give her important vitamins. She doesn't eat too many sweets.

في فترة بعد الظهر، تبدأ سارة بأداء واجباتها المدرسية أولاً. بعد ذلك، تساعد والدتها في الحديقة، حيث يزرعان الخضروات الطازجة معًا. وعلى العشاء، تتناول سارة الكثير من الخضروات والفواكه، فهي تمدّها بالفيتامينات المهمة. ولا تكثر من تناول الحلويات.

In the evening, Sarah takes a shower and brushes her teeth again. She **goes to bed early** at 8:30 p.m. She sleeps for 9 hours every night. Getting enough **sleep** helps her body stay healthy and her mind stay **sharp**.

في المساء، تستحم سارة وتغسل أسنانها بالفرشاة مرة أخرى. تخذل إلى النوم مبكرًا في تمام الساعة 8:30 مساءً. تنام لمدة تسع ساعات كل ليلة. فالنوم الكافي يساعد جسدها على البقاء بصحة، وعقلها على البقاء بيقظًا.

Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school. She has lots of energy to learn, play, and enjoy her day!

تساعد العادات الصحية التي تتبعها سارة على شعورها بالراحة وتفوقها في المدرسة. ولديها الكثير من الطاقة لتتعلم، وتلعب، وتستمتع بيومها!



Language in use

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present simple for daily habits and routines.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

e.g. He **brushes** his teeth every day. e.g. The girls **watch** TV every day.

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / A plural noun + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. Some children **play** sports after school.

e.g. My brother and I **watch** TV in the morning.

He / She / It / A singular noun + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + (s / es / ies)

e.g. He **plays** football every day.

e.g. She **brushes** her teeth every day.

Spelling rules

1) We add "es" to the verb that ends in (ss, sh, ch, o, x, z)

نضيف «es» للفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (ss, sh, ch, o, x, z).

go → goes

brush → brushes

watch → watches

pass → passes

e.g. She **goes** to bed early at 8:30 p.m.

2) If the verb ends in (a consonant + y), we change (y) into (i) then we add (es).

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ «y» يسبقه حرف ساكن تحول الـ «y» إلى «i» ثم نضيف (es).

study → studies

cry → cries

e.g. My sister **studies** English every day.

3) If the verb ends in (a vowel + y), we add (s).

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ «y» يسبقه حرف متحرك نضيف «s».

play → plays

stay → stays

e.g. He **plays** football after school.



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Sarah some exercises in the garden.
a) do b) does c) doing d) am doing
2. For breakfast, Sarah orange juice.
a) drinks b) drink c) drunk d) drinking
3. We our mother in the kitchen.
a) help b) helps c) helping d) is helping
4. In the afternoon, they their homework.
a) doing b) done c) does d) do
5. She to bed at 10:00 p.m.
a) go b) goes c) going d) gone
6. Some children sports after school.
a) playing b) plays c) play d) is playing
7. My brother and I TV in the evening.
a) watches b) watching c) watch d) are watching
8. She her teeth every day.
a) brush b) brushes c) is brushing d) brushed
9. The girl healthy food every day.
a) eating b) eat c) eats d) is eating

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. She (take) vitamins every morning.
2. My brother and I (watches) TV in the evening.
3. My sister (study) English every day.
4. The nurse (help) sick people.
5. We (plays) sports after school.
6. Ali (eat) healthy food every day.
7. Sarah (wake) up late every day.

Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Sarah is years old.
a) two b) twelve c) ten d) eleven
- Sarah follows habits every day.
a) bad b) good c) worse d) sad
- In the, she wakes up early at 6:00 a.m.
a) afternoon b) evening c) morning d) night
- She does some simple exercises in the
a) garden b) school c) street d) home

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- She her teeth every morning.
a) brushes b) washes c) eats d) drinks
- Ali washes his every day.
a) teeth b) bed c) shower d) face
- The children healthy food.
a) drink b) eat c) wash d) brush
- Going to bed early is a habit.
a) unhealthy b) unwell c) healthy d) bad
- Sarah drinks of water between classes.
a) number b) box c) much d) plenty
- the morning, they wake up early.
a) In b) On c) At d) Next
- She plays with her friends during break time.
a) vegetables b) fruit c) sweets d) sports

Lesson (2)

8. My healthy is getting enough sleep at night.
a) happened b) habit c) exercise d) food
9. Her healthy habits help her
a) feel good b) eat enough food
c) make friends d) win competitions
10. Why does Sarah healthy food?
a) drink b) play c) eat d) help

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

energy - dinner - eats - habits - healthy

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good 1) every day to stay strong and 2) For breakfast, Sarah 3) healthy food to give her 4) for the day. At school, she drinks plenty of water between classes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Sarah is a healthy girl. She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy. She wakes up early. In the morning, she brushes her teeth and washes her face. She eats healthy food and drinks plenty of water. She does some simple exercises in the garden. She goes to bed early. Her healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school. She has lots of energy to learn, play, and enjoy her day.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Sarah follows habits.
a) bad b) worse c) good d) awful
2. In the, Sarah brushes her teeth and washes her face.
a) morning b) afternoon c) evening d) night

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How do healthy habits help Sarah at school?
4. Mention two healthy habits that Sarah follows.

Unit (1)

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. My sister (study) English every day.
2. He (read) books in the morning.
3. Some children (plays) sports after school.
4. My brother (watch) TV in the evening.
5. We (using) our eyes to see.
6. They (eats) healthy food.
7. My sister and I (sleeps) early every night.
8. I (does) my homework in the afternoon.
9. He (eat) healthy food.
10. Layla (drinking) water every morning.

6

Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- he brushes his teeth every day

7

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My Healthy Day

Guiding elements:

(good habits - wake up - healthy - exercises)

Lesson (3) Story Time: Goha's Great Meal

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

market	سوق	owner	المالك
restaurant	مطعم	jingling	جلجلة / رنين
invite	يدعو	greedy	طماع
enough	كافي	smell	رائحة
wonderful	رائع / مذهش	yummy	لذيذ
coins	عملات معدنية	impressed	منبهر

Definitions

تعريفات

owner	someone who has something	المالك
jingling	a light, ringing sound	جلجلة / رنين
share	to give some of what you have to others	بشارك
hungry	wanting to eat	جوعان
greedy	always wanting more than what is needed	طماع
characters	are the people and animals in a story	الشخصيات
the setting	is the time and place of a story	مكان وزمان القصة

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

yummy smell	رائحة شهية	deep breath	نفس عميق
for free	مجاناً	pay for	يدفع مقابل
feel less hungry	يشعر بجوع أقل	with others	مع الآخرين
smell of soup	رائحة الشورية «الحساء»	the sound of my coins	صوت عملائي «نقودي»
Come inside	أدخل	share with	يتشارك مع

Conjugation of verbs

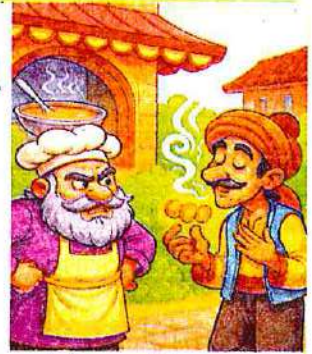
تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	
walk	يمشي	walked	
believe	يعتقد	believed	
close	يغلق	closed	
Present		Past	
come	يأتي	came	
smell	يشم	smelled / smelt	
pay	يدفع	paid	

Listen and read.

The Beginning: Meet the people / know the place:

One morning, Goha was walking through the market. He was very hungry, but didn't have enough money to buy food. Suddenly, he smelled something wonderful. The yummy smell was coming from a restaurant's window. Goha stopped and sat outside the restaurant. He closed his eyes and took a deep breath.



"Ah," he said. "This wonderful smell makes me feel less hungry!"

قال جحا: «أوه، هذه الرائحة الرائعة تجعلني أشعر بجوع أقل!»

البداية: التعرّف على الأشخاص ومعرفة المكان: في صباح أحد الأيام، كان جحا يسير في السوق. شعر بجوع شديد، لكنه لم يكن يملك ما يكفي من المال لشراء الطعام. وفجأة، شم رائحة رائعة. كانت الرائحة الشهية تنبعث من نافذة أحد المطاعم. توقف جحا وجلس خارج المطعم، ثم أغشى عينيه وأخذ نفساً عميقاً قال جحا: «هذه الرائحة تجعلني أشعر بجوع أقل».

The problem: Something goes wrong:

The restaurant owner saw Goha and asked, "What are you doing?"

المشكلة: يحدث خطأ ما. رأى صاحب المطعم جحا وسأله: «ماذا تفعل؟»

Goha said, "I'm enjoying the smell of your delicious soup."

قال جحا: «أستمتع برائحة حساءك الشهية».

The owner was greedy. He said, "You can't smell the soup for free! You must pay for it!"

كان صاحب المطعم طامعاً، فقال: «لا يمكنك أن تشم رائحة الحساء مجاناً! يجب أن تدفع ثمن ذلك!»

The Middle: The character tries to fix it:

Goha thought for a moment. Then took out a few coins from his pocket. He shook them in his hand, and they made a jingling sound. "Here," said Goha. "If you want money for the smell of your soup, then you can take the sound of my coins."

الوسط: الشخصية تحاول معالجة المشكلة: فكّر جحا لبرهة، ثم أخرج من جيبه بضع عملات. هزّها في يده فأصدرت رنيناً. قال جحا: «تفضل، إن كنت تريد مالاً مقابل رائحة حساءك، فخذ إذا صوت نقودي».

The End: The problem is solved:

The owner laughed at Goha's clever answer. "Come inside," he said. "Let's share this soup." Good food tastes better when shared with others!

النهاية: تم حل المشكلة: ضحك صاحب المطعم من رد جحا الذكي، وقال: «تفضل إلى الداخل، لنشارك هذا الحساء». فالطعام اللذيذ يكون أطيب عند مشاركته مع الآخرين.



Listen again and answer.

استمع مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

1. Why did Goha sit outside the restaurant?
2. How was Goha clever in solving the problem?



Pronunciation

Short vowels sounds

are pronounced quickly and not pronounced as their letter name, like the "a" in "hat".
 أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة: تُنطق بسرعة ولا تُنطق كاسم الحرف نفسه، مثل حرف «a» في كلمة «hat».



/æ/ hat
قبعة



/æ/ rat
فأر



/ɑ:/ pot
إِناء



/e/ pen
قلم جاف

Long vowels sounds

Long vowel sounds are pronounced the same way as their letter name like the "a" in "plate".
 أصوات الحروف المتحركة الطويلة: تنطق بنفس طريقة نطق اسم الحرف، مثل حرف «a» في كلمة «plate».



/eɪ/ plate
طبق



/əʊ/ home
منزل



/ne/ cone
شئ مخروطي



/i:/ bean
حبة فول



/i:/ feed
يطعم



/i:/ heat
يسخن



Listen and complete with long vowel words.

1. Hany went and changed into his best clothes.
2. The children their cat in the morning.
3. I washed the after dinner.

Activities On Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Goha was walking through the
a) street b) home c) market d) restaurant
- Goha was
a) hungry b) thirsty c) tired d) happy
- Goha didn't have enough to buy food.
a) water b) food c) money d) time
- He smelled delicious
a) soap b) soup c) lentils d) pasta

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The are the people and animals in a story.
a) narrators b) characters c) settings d) places
- The is the time and place of a story.
a) narrator b) hero c) setting d) character
- Do you share food your friends?
a) in b) on c) at d) with
- The is someone who has something.
a) owner b) character c) narrator d) thief
- The person always wants more than what is needed.
a) hungry b) greedy c) happy d) polite
- To is to give some of what you have to others.
a) eat b) drink c) study d) share
- I am I want to eat.
a) thirsty b) hungry c) tired d) greedy
- The children their cat in the morning.
a) plate b) bean c) feed d) eat

Lesson (3)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

play - smell - coins - restaurant - share

One day, Goha was hungry but didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a 1) He sat outside, enjoying the 2) of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his 3) The owner laughed and invited him in to 4) the soup.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

One day, Goha was hungry but didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a restaurant's window. He sat outside, enjoying the smell of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay for the smell of the soup, but with the sound of his coins. The owner laughed and invited him to share the soup.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Goha was
a) thirsty b) hungry c) happy d) sad
- The soup was
a) awful b) bad c) delicious d) worse

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why did Goha sit outside the restaurant?
- How was Goha clever in solving the problem?

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- what are you doing, goha?

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Sharing things with others

Guiding elements:

(poor - friends - share - better)

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing: Sequence words

Think and create: A presentation

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

stay healthy

يبقى بصحة جيدة daily routine

روتين يومي

get dressed

يرتدي healthy life

حياة صحية

Sequence words

الكلمات الدالة على تسلسل الأحداث

First,...

أولاً After that,...

بعد ذلك

Next,...

التالي Finally,...

في النهاية

Then,...

ثم

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

My Healthy Life

Having a daily routine is important. Let me tell you about my healthy habits and how they help me stay strong.

الروتين اليومي أمر مهم. دعوني أخبركم عن عاداتي الصحية وكيف تساعدني على البقاء قويا.

Every day, I follow the same routine. **First**, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. **Next**, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

كل يوم، أتبع نفس الروتين. أولاً، أستيقظ مبكراً في تمام الساعة السادسة صباحاً وأغسل أسناني. أغسل وجهي وأرتدي ملابس المدرسة. بعد ذلك، أتناول فطوراً صحياً يشمل الحليب والفواكه.

Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. During break time, I eat a healthy snack and drink water. **After school**, I have lunch with my family.

ثم أذهب إلى المدرسة، حيث أدرس وألعب مع أصدقائي. وخلال وقت الاستراحة، أتناول وجبة خفيفة صحية وأشرب الماء. وبعد المدرسة، أتناول الغداء مع عائلتي.

After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. In the evening, I take a shower and have dinner. **Finally**, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy.

بعد ذلك، أقوم بعمل واجباتي المدرسية ثم أمارس الرياضة لمدة ساعة. وفي المساء، أستحم وأتناول العشاء. وأخيراً، أنام الساعة التاسعة مساءً، لأن النوم المبكر يساعدني على الحفاظ على صحتي.



Lessons (4 & 5)

Tip

Sequence words:

كلمات تسلسل الأحداث:

- Help us show the order of actions or events. تساعدنا في عرض ترتيب الأحداث.
- They tell us what happens at the beginning, the middle, and at the end. تُخبرنا بما يحدث في البداية، وفي الوسط، وفي النهاية.

My daily routine.

روتيني اليومي.



First, I wake up early at 6:00 am and brush my teeth.

أولاً، أستيقظ مبكراً في الساعة 6:00 صباحاً وأغسل أسناني بالفرشاة.



Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

التالي، أتناول فطوراً صحياً يشمل الحليب والفواكه.



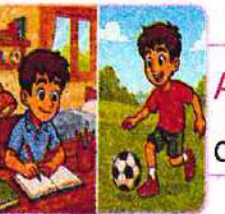
Then, I go to school where I study and play with my friends.

ثم، أذهب إلى المدرسة حيث أدرس وألعب مع أصدقائي.



After school, I have lunch with my family.

بعد المدرسة، أتناول الغداء مع عائلتي.



After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour.

بعد ذلك، أؤدي واجبي المنزلي ثم أمارس الرياضة لمدة ساعة.



Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.

أخيراً، أذهب للفراش في الساعة 9:00 مساءً.

A Presentation

- 1** Prepare a presentation about healthy eating habits. Share your presentation with the class.

حضّر عرضًا تقديميًا عن عادات الأكل الصحية. شارك عرضك مع فصلك.

1. Speak clearly and slowly so your friends can understand you.

تحدّث بوضوح وببطء حتى يتمكن أصدقاؤك من فهمك.

2. Share your presentation with the class.

شارك عرضك التقديمي مع الصف.

Make sure to

Use clear headings.

تستخدم عناوين واضحة.

Add pictures.

تضيف صورًا.

Keep the text simple.

تجعل النص بسيطًا.

Speak for 3-5 minutes.

تتحدث لمدة تتراوح بين 3 إلى 5 دقائق.

- 2** Give your feedback: Circle stars (1-5) to rate. Add a comment if you need to.

قدّم رأيك: ضع دائرة حول عدد النجوم (من 1 إلى 5) لتقييمك. أضف تعليقًا إذا أردت.

1 star = poor

"Good job"

2 stars = fair

"Excellent"

3 stars = good

"Well done!"

4 stars = very good

"Please speak louder"

5 stars = excellent

"Work a little harder"

1st group



2nd group



3rd group



Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Having a daily routine is
a) bad b) best c) important d) hard
2. I wake up at a.m.
a) four b) six c) sixty d) sixteen
3. I get dressed for
a) school b) home c) restaurant d) hospital
4., I have a healthy breakfast.
a) First b) After that c) Next d) Then

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. How can you healthy?
a) stay b) do c) play d) have
2. This is my healthy routine.
a) day b) days c) daily d) dairy
3. I my homework and then play sports for one hour.
a) play b) eat c) drink d) do
4. They dressed for school.
a) get b) buy c) drink d) go
5. Every day, I the same routine.
a) eat b) follow c) go d) make

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

go - First - school - strong - Next

Having a daily routine is important. Healthy habits help me stay
) Every day, I follow the same routine. 2), I
wake up early at 6:00a.m. 3), I go to school. After 4),
have lunch with my family.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

This is my healthy daily routine. First, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. After school, I have lunch with my family.

After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. In the evening, I take a shower and have dinner. Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

-, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m.
a) Next b) First c) Then d) After
- I have and fruit for breakfast.
a) juice b) fish c) milk d) coffee

B) Answer the following questions.

- What do you do at school?
- When do you go to bed?

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- why are the senses important

6 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Healthy daily routine

Guiding elements:

(wake up - Next, - school - bed)



Review on Unit (1)

The senses

see /sight	يرى / حاسة البصر	touch	يلمس / حاسة اللمس	nose	الأنف
hear/hearing	يسمع / حاسة السمع	taste	يتذوق / حاسة التذوق	hand	اليد
smell	يشم / حاسة الشم	tongue	اللسان	eye	عين

Healthy habits

brush teeth	يغسل أسنانه بالفرشاة	do exercises	يمارس تمارين
wash face	يغسل الوجه	eat healthy food	يتناول طعام صحي
go to bed early	يذهب للفراش مبكراً	take a shower	يأخذ دش

Story time

owner	المالك	hungry	جوعان	share	يشارك
jingling	جلجلة / رنين	greedy	طماع	money	نقود

Sequence words

First	أولاً	Next	التالي	Then	ثم
After that	بعد ذلك	Finally	في النهاية		

Phonics

Short vowel sounds		Long vowel sounds	
ot	إناء	plate	طبق
en	قلم جاف	home	بيت
at	قبة	bean	حبة فول
		cone	مخروط
		feed	يطعم
		heat	يسخن

Language

Present Simple

Some children **play** football after school.

He **watches** TV every day.



Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

The five senses

The senses are very important. They help us understand the world around us. We have five senses. They are sight, hearing, smell, touch and taste. Our senses help us stay safe.

Healthy habits

I follow good habits every day to stay strong and healthy. I wake up early and brush my teeth. Next, I do some simple exercises. I eat healthy food to give me energy for the day.

Sharing things with others

We should share things with our friends and family. Sharing makes life better. Good food tastes better when it is shared. Rich people should share money and food with the poor. We must help each other.

Goha's great meal

One day, Goha was hungry but didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a restaurant's window. He sat outside, enjoying the smell of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay for the smell of the soup, but with the sound of his coins. The owner laughed and invited him to share the soup.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

اللسان	التلوق
حواس	البصر
حديقة المدرسة	السمع
عيون	اللمس
أذن	الشم
يد	أنف

Lesson (2)

الإفطار	يأخذ دُش
عصير برتقال	يمارس تمارين
طازج	يتناول طعام صحي
غشاء	يغسل أسنانه بالفرشاة
خضروات	يغسل وجهه
فواكه	يذهب للنوم مبكراً

Lesson (3)

المالك	سوق
جلجلة / زنين	مطعم
طماع	طعام
يشم	كافٍ
لذيذ	رائع / مدهش
شورية	عملات معدنية
جوعان	مال

Lessons (4 & 5)

أولاً	في النهاية
التالي	يبقى بصحة جيدة
ثم	روتين يومي
بعد ذلك	حياة صحية

Activities On Unit 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We have senses.
a) four b) fifty c) five d) six
2. We use our to touch.
a) legs b) hands c) eyes d) ears
3. Our senses help us the world.
a) eat b) drink c) visit d) understand
4. We can with our nose.
a) see b) touch c) smell d) hear

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I use my tongue to.....
a) taste b) smell c) hear d) see
2. The are the people and animals in a story.
a) setting b) narrators c) characters d) plot

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

coins - money - smell - soup - owner

One day, Goha was hungry. He didn't have enough 1) to buy food. He smelled delicious 2) from a restaurant. He sat outside, enjoying the 3) of it. The 4) asked Goha to pay for the smell.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Toka. I'm ten years old. I have a healthy daily routine to stay strong. I wake up early and have a healthy breakfast. I walk to school with my brother. After school, we have lunch at home with our family. We do our homework and I go to bed early to get enough sleep.

Choose the correct answer.

- Toka wakes up
a) late b) early c) on time d) in time
- Toka and her brother to school.
a) ride b) cycle c) walk d) drive

Answer the following questions.

How old is Toka?
Why does Toka have a healthy daily routine?

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- We (sees) with our eyes.
- Layla (drink) water every morning.
- My sister and I (sleeps) early.
- He (wake) up early at 6:00 a.m.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

i use my nose to smell

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your healthy habits

Guiding elements:

(early - healthy food - wash - brush)

.....
.....
.....

Al-Azhar Corner

1

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

understand - senses - five - learn

Miss Mona : Good morning, children.

Children : Good morning, Ms. What will we 1).....today?

Miss Mona : Today, we'll learn about our amazing 2).....

Children : How many sense do we have?

Miss Mona : We have 3).....senses.

Children : Why are senses important, Ms. Mona?

Miss Mona : They help us 4).....the world around us.

2

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

sleep - nine - healthy - habit

Malak : What's your healthy 1).....?

Mariam : My healthy habit is getting enough 2).....at night.

Malak : How many hours do you sleep?

Mariam : I sleep for 3).....hours every night.

Malak : Why is a good night's sleep important to us?

Mariam : Getting enough sleep helps our body stay 4).....

3

Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. are - the - What - senses - five - ?

2. see - with - eyes - He - his - can - .

3. does - Sarah - the - in - exercises - garden - .

4. brushes - teeth - He - day - his - every - .

5. friends - your - food - with - Do - share - you - ?

Unit 2

My Community

مجتمعي



Learning Outcomes

Speaking	Discuss in pairs ways you can do to help your community	ناقش مع زميلك الطرق التي يمكنك من خلالها المساعدة في مجتمعك
	Share stories about your community's history and traditions	شارك قصصاً عن تاريخ وتقاليد مجتمعك
	Answer questions about how people help their community based on the information provided in the text	أجب عن الأسئلة المتعلقة بكيفية مساعدة الناس لمجتمعهم استناداً إلى المعلومات الواردة في النص
Reading	Suggest solutions to problems in the community	اقترح حلولاً للمشكلات في المجتمع
	Share the Information about the traditions and festivals of the Delta region and Upper Egypt	شارك المعلومات عن التقاليد والاحتفالات في منطقة الدلتا وصعيد مصر.
		حدد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع
Listening	Identify solutions to community problems	حدد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع
	Discriminate the /f/ and /v/ sounds in words	ميز صوتي /f/ و /v/ في الكلمات
	Write sentences about how you help your community	اكتب جملاً عن كيفية مساعدتك لمجتمعك
Writing	Write a diary entry about your community's history	اكتب مذكرة يومية عن تاريخ مجتمعك
	Create a poster about a community problem and its solution	صمم ملصقاً عن مشكلة في المجتمع وحلها

Lesson (1) Helping the Community

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



collect

يجمع



plant

يزرع



clean

ينظف



help

يساعد



feed

يطعم



volunteer

يتطوع

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

community

مجتمع

others

both الآخرين

كلاهما

park

حديقة / منتزه

clothes

neighbors ملابس

جيران

street

شارع great

bottle عظيم

زجاجة

duck

بطة trash

garden قمامة

حديقة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

help

يساعد

helped

plant

يزرع

planted

clean

ينظف

cleaned

need

يحتاج

needed

volunteer

يتطوع

volunteered

collect

يجمع

collected

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

feed

يطعم fed

give

يعطي gave

make

يصنع made

do / does

يفعل did

feel

يشعر felt

Lesson (1)

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

talk about	يتحدث عن	helping hands	يد العون
It is fun to + inf.	من الممتع أن	That's cool!	هذا رائع!
Great job!	عمل رائع!	What about you?	وماذا عنك؟
on Fridays	في أيام الجمعة	That's great!	هذا رائع!

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

"Helping Hands" يد العون

Amira Hello, Adam! What do you do to **help** our community?

مرحباً يا آدم! ماذا تفعل لمساعدة مجتمعنا؟

Adam Hello, Amira! I **clean trash** from the streets with my friends every Saturday.

مرحباً يا أميرة! أنظف القمامة من الشوارع مع أصدقائي كل يوم سبت.

Amira That's cool! Do you **plant trees**?

رائع! هل تزرع الأشجار؟

Adam Yes, I do. I plant trees in the park.

نعم، أزرع الأشجار في الحديقة.

Amira That's nice! Do you do other things to help?

هذا جميل! هل تقوم بأشياء أخرى للمساعدة؟

Adam Yes! Sometimes I **feed the dogs and cats**. I feel so happy when I **give** them food!

نعم! أحياناً أطعم الكلاب والقطط. أشعر بسعادة كبيرة عندما أقدم لها الطعام!

Amira Does your sister help too?

وهل أختك تساعد أيضاً؟

Adam Yes, she does! She helps her neighbors, and she **volunteers** at the **community park**.

نعم، إنها تساعد جيرانها، وتتطوع في حديقة المجتمع.

Amira Wow, you both do a great job!

واو، كلاكما تقومان بعمل رائع!

Adam Thanks! What about you? How do you help?

شكراً! وماذا عنك؟ كيف تساعدني؟

Amira I collect **clothes** and **give** them to people who need them.

أجمع الملابس وأعطيها لمن يحتاجها.

Adam That's great! When we all help, we make our community great.

هذا رائع! عندما نساعد جميعاً، نصنع مجتمعاً رائعاً.

Activities On Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Adam his community every week.
a) helps b) plants c) feeds d) collects
- Adam cleans from the streets.
a) ducks b) trash c) flowers d) neighbors
- Adam trees in the park.
a) volunteers b) feeds c) plants d) cleans
- He feels so when he helps.
a) sad b) bad c) angry d) happy

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We to help in the park.
a) help b) volunteer c) clean d) feed
- They clean the streets and bottles.
a) collect b) plant c) feed d) help
- My neighbors flowers and trees.
a) clean b) help c) volunteer d) plant
- My sister the ducks.
a) feeds b) plants c) gives d) does
- It's fun to and make the park nice for everyone.
a) feed b) help c) need d) visit
- She at the community garden.
a) feeds b) helps c) needs d) visits
- I clothes and give them to people who need them.
a) collect b) clean c) give d) make
- They clean the park Fridays.
a) in b) on c) at d) to

Lesson (1)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

park - food - community - cleans - feeds

Adam helps his community in many ways. Every Saturday, he

1) trash from the streets with his friends. He also plants trees in the 2) He 3) the dogs and cats. Adam feels happy when he gives them 4)

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Adam and his sister love helping their community. Every Saturday, Adam cleans trash from the streets with his friends. He also plants trees in the park and feeds hungry dogs and cats. His sister helps their neighbors and volunteers at the community park. She collects clothes and gives them to people who need them. They feel so happy when they help to make their community great.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The general idea of the text is "Helping the".
a) community b) sports c) school d) food
- Adam cleans trash from the streets with his
a) pets b) friends c) sisters d) parents

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does Adam's sister do?
- How do they feel when they help?

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding elements:

Helping the community

(clean - park - neighbors - great)

Lesson (2)

Community Problems and Solutions

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

problem	مشكلة	solution	حل	traffic	حركة المرور
instead	بدلاً من ذلك	dirty	متسخ - قذر	bin	صندوق القمامة

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

near	قريب	fewer cars	سيارات أقل	road	طريق
engine	محرك	member	عضو	distance	مسافة
ground	الأرض	everywhere	في كل مكان	especially	وخاصة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
save	يوفر / saved	fix	يصلح / fixed
reduce	يقلل / reduced	solve	يحل / solved
discuss	يناقش / discussed	move	يتحرك / moved
cycle	يركب دراجة / cycled	use	يستخدم / used

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
leave	يترك / left	have / has	يملك / لديه / had
put	يضع / put	buy	يشترى / bought
throw	يرمي / threw	run	يجري / يدور بـ / ran

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

the best way to	أفضل طريقة لـ	take the bus	يركب الحافلة
Let's + inf.	هيا بنا ...	on the road	على الطريق
leave the car engine running			اترك محرك السيارة قيد التشغيل

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

علي وموني يتحدثان فرقاً "Ali and Mona Make a Difference"

Ali Our community has many problems, so let's talk about them.

مجتمعنا يواجه العديد من المشكلات، فلنتحدث عنها.

Mona OK! Let's also discuss solutions to fix them.

حسنًا! دعنا نناقش أيضًا الحلول لمعالجتها.

Ali The first problem is traffic. Cars don't move quickly in the morning, especially near schools.

المشكلة الأولى هي الازدحام المروري. السيارات لا تتحرك بسرعة في الصباح، خصوصًا قرب المدارس.

Mona Do you know how to solve this problem?

هل تعرف كيف يمكننا حل هذه المشكلة؟

Ali Yes, I think so. We don't need to use cars every day. We can take the school bus instead. There will be fewer cars on the road.

نعم، أعتقد ذلك. لسنا بحاجة إلى استخدام السيارات كل يوم. يمكننا أن نستقل حافلة المدرسة بدلًا من ذلك. سيكون عدد السيارات على الطريق أقل.

Mona That's right! The second problem is trash. Some people don't put trash in bins, so the streets look dirty.

هذا صحيح! المشكلة الثانية هي القمامة. بعض الناس لا يضعون القمامة في الصناديق، لذا تبدو الشوارع متسخة.

Mona Does your street have this problem?

هل يعاني شارعك من هذه المشكلة؟

Ali Not anymore. Our neighbors don't throw trash on the ground. We put new bins everywhere. Everyone uses them, and now our street is very clean!

ليس بعد الآن. جيراننا لا يرمون القمامة على الأرض. لقد وضعنا صناديق قمامة جديدة في كل مكان. الجميع يستخدمها، والآن شارعنا نظيف جدًا!

Mona That's great!

هذا رائع!

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم

Problems	المشكلات	Solutions	الحلول
Traffic is bad near schools.	تسوء حركة المرور بالقرب من المدارس.	Use the school bus instead of cars.	استخدم حافلة المدرسة بدلًا من السيارات.
Trash is thrown on the ground.	يتم رمي القمامة على الأرض.	Put bins everywhere.	ضع صناديق في كل مكان.
Traffic	الازدحام المروري.	Walk or cycle for short distances.	امشي أو استخدم الدراجة للمسافات القصيرة.

Language in use

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Negative and question

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present simple for daily habits and routines.

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

e.g. I **take** a shower every day.

e.g. He **brushes** his teeth before he goes to bed.

Negative النفي

(I / We / You / They / A plural noun) + **don't** + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.

(He / She / It / A singular noun) + **doesn't** + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. She **doesn't need** to use cars every day.

Note:

don't = do not

doesn't = does not

Question السؤال

Yes / No question:

(Do + I / we / you / they / a plural noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

- Yes, + الفاعل + **do**.

- No, + الفاعل + **don't**.

e.g. **Do** you **know** how to solve this problem?

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't.

Does + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

- Yes, + الفاعل + **does**.

- No, + الفاعل + **doesn't**.

e.g. **Does** your street **have** this problem?

- Yes, it does.

- No, it doesn't.



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We need to use cars every day.
a) don't b) doesn't c) aren't d) isn't
2. Does your street this problem?
a) has b) have c) had d) having
3. Our neighbors don't trash on the ground.
a) throws b) throwing c) threw d) throw
4. They save electricity.
a) don't b) doesn't c) aren't d) haven't
5. you know how to solve this problem?
a) Does b) Has c) Do d) Doing
6. He put trash in bins.
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) hasn't
7. She like pollution.
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) hasn't
8. I don't the bus to school.
a) take b) takes c) took d) taking

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. She (don't) like pollution.
2. They (doesn't) use trash bins.
3. (Do) he play tennis?
4. (Does) cars move quickly in the morning?
5. We (doesn't) need to use cars every day.
6. They don't (plays) football after school.
7. Does he (rides) to work every day?
8. Mazen doesn't (rides) his bike to school every day.
9. No, they (doesn't) watch movies on weekends.
10. (Do) the sun rise in the east?

Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Ali and Mona talk about near schools.
a) traffic b) water c) library d) market
- Cars don't fast in the morning.
a) take b) move c) solve d) fix
- People now use
a) cars b) beds c) bins d) planes
- Now the street is
a) dirty b) clean c) ugly d) crowded

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The bus helps reduce
a) traffic b) schools c) trash d) trees
- Our neighbors don't throw trash on the
a) traffic b) bin c) sky d) ground
- Cars don't move quickly near
a) ground b) schools c) bins d) community
- Everyone uses trash in my community.
a) pins b) bins c) traffic d) ground

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

buses - street - trash - Traffic - bins

Ali and Mona are talking about problems in their community.

- 1) is bad near schools in the morning. Ali suggests using school
2)..... Another problem is 3) Some people throw trash on the
ground. But now, they have new 4), and everyone uses them. The
street looks better now.

Lesson (2)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ali and Mona are talking about problems in their community. Ali says the first problem is traffic in the morning, especially near schools. Cars move slowly, and this makes students late. He thinks using the school bus is a good solution. Mona agrees. Then, they talk about trash. Some people don't use trash bins, so the streets look dirty. Ali says they put new bins everywhere, and now the street is clean again.

a) Choose the correct answer.

- The first problem is in the morning.
a) pollution b) trash c) traffic d) water
- Cars move and this makes students late.
a) fast b) quickly c) slowly d) sleepy

b) Answer the following questions.

- Do you think using buses is a good solution?
- What do they do to make streets clean again?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- I (doesn't) go to school by car.
- (Does) they collect plastic bottles from the street?
- He (don't) throw trash in the bin.
- (Do) she help her community?
- Do you (volunteers) at the community park?
- Cars (doesn't) move quickly in the morning.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

do you know how to solve this problem

ali's street has new bins

Lesson (3) EGYPT: MY CULTURE

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

Egypt	مصر	the Delta	الدلتا
Egyptians	المصريون	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر
north	شمال	Nubia	النوبة
south	جنوب	harvest	حصاد
festivals	احتفالات	culture	ثقافة
traditions	تقاليد	sugar cane	قصب السكر

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

region	منطقة	colorful	ملون / زاهي
decorations	زينة	city	مدينة كبيرة
village	قرية	pottery	صناعة الفخار / الخزف
turban	عمامة	spring festival	احتفال الربيع
traditional songs	أغاني تقليدية	crafts	حرف يدوية
modern	حديث / عصري	bright	ساطع - لامع
proud of	فخور بـ	rice	أرز
carpets	سجاد	designs	تصاميم
galabeya	جلابية	outfits	ملابس
story	قصة	events	أحداث
stylish	أنيق	Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated
work يعمل	worked
paint يلون / يطلي	painted
love يحب	loved
share يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

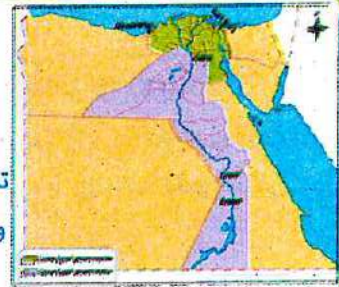
Present	Past
grow يزرع	grew
sing يغني	sang
wear يرتدي	wore
weave ينسج	wove
tell يخبر / يحكي	told

Lesson (3)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Egypt has two special regions: The Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its traditions and culture.



تمتلك مصر منطقتين مميزتين: الدلتا في الشمال، وصعيد مصر في الجنوب. ولكل منطقة تقاليدها وثقافتها الخاصة.

In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts. Women are known for making clothes.

في منطقة الدلتا، يحتفل الناس بعيد الربيع بزينة ملونة وأطعمة خاصة. يزرع الفلاحون الأرز والقطن. ويعمل كثير من الناس في المصانع ويصنعون حرفاً يدوية جميلة. وتشتهر النساء بصناعة الملابس.

In Upper Egypt, life is different. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special designs.

في صعيد مصر، تختلف الحياة. يحتفل الناس بحصاد قصب السكر من خلال مهرجانات كبيرة. يصنعون الفخار وينسجون السجاد الملون يدوياً. تغني العائلات الأغاني التقليدية وتحكي القصص القديمة. وفي بعض المناطق مثل النوبة، تُطلى المنازل بألوان زاهية ولها تصاميم مميزة.

In the Delta region, men wear galabeyas or modern clothes like pants and shirts. Women wear stylish dresses or traditional outfits for special events.

في منطقة الدلتا، يرتدي الرجال الجلابيب أو الملابس العصرية مثل السراويل «البناطيل» والقمصان. أما النساء، فيرتدين فساتين أنيقة أو أزياء تقليدية في حالات خاصة.

In Upper Egypt, men also wear galabeyas and sometimes turbans. Women wear colorful dresses.

في صعيد مصر، يرتدي الرجال أيضاً الجلابيب، وأحياناً العمامات. أما النساء، فيرتدين فساتين ملونة.

Even though the two places have some differences, they share many of the same traditions. Egyptians are proud of their culture and love to celebrate it together!

على الرغم من وجود بعض الاختلافات بين المنطقتين، إلا أنهما تشتركان في العديد من التقاليد نفسها. يفتخر المصريون بثقافتهم ويحبون الاحتفال بها معاً!



Pronunciation

/f/ and /v/ sounds

The **/f/** sound is voiceless-your throat doesn't vibrate, like in «fish».

الصوت /f/ هو صوت مهموس - لا يهتز فيه الحلق، كما في كلمة «سمكة» (fish).

factory

مصنع



frog

ضفدع



forest

غابة



flag

علم



The **/v/** sound is voiced-your throat vibrates, like in «van».

الصوت /v/ هو صوت مجهور - يهتز فيه الحلق، كما في كلمة «شاحنة صغيرة» (van).

van

شاحنة



violin

آلة الكمان



view

منظر طبيعي



vest

سترة / صديري



Read and sort the words. اقرأ وصنف الكلمات.

forest - violin - flag - vest

/f/

/v/

Lesson (3)

Prefixes البادئات



A prefix is a small group of letters added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning.

البادئة هي مجموعة صغيرة من الحروف تُضاف إلى بداية الكلمة لتغيير معناها.

dis = not or opposite

e.g. like يحب → dislike لا يحب

il = not

e.g. legal قانوني → illegal غير قانوني

ir = not

e.g. regular منتظم → irregular غير منتظم

Read the words with their opposites.

اقرأ الكلمات مع عكسها.

Word	Opposite (with prefix)
appear يظهر	disappear يختفي
logical منطقي	illogical غير منطقي
responsible مسؤول	irresponsible غير مسؤول / مستهتر
honest أمين	dishonest غير أمين
relevant ذو صلة / متعلق بـ	irrelevant ليس له «صلة» / علاقة بـ

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- It is (legal) to drive here.
- He (likes) loud noise.
- The verb "see" has an (regular) past form.
- The students are (responsible). Their classroom is very dirty.

Activities On Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Delta region is in the
 a) south b) east c) west d) north
2. People in the Delta region grow
 a) rice b) sugarcane c) flowers d) corn
3. In Upper Egypt, they make pottery and
 a) beds b) books c) carpets d) chairs
4. love their traditions.
 a) Americans b) Egyptians c) Japanese d) Chinese

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The two regions of Egypt are the Delta and
 a) Upper Egypt b) Cairo c) Red Sea d) desert
2. People in Upper Egypt celebrate the cane harvest.
 a) cotton b) sugar c) rice d) carrot
3. The houses in Nubia have special
 a) designs b) glass c) tall d) water
4. What Omar says is It doesn't make sense.
 a) illogical b) appear c) dishonest d) dislike
5. The teacher says my question is to the lesson.
 a) legal b) irrelevant c) irresponsible d) appear
6. The cat always after eating all the food.
 a) irregular b) illegal c) disappears d) dishonest

Lesson (3)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

traditions - sugar cane - pottery - special - festivals

In Egypt, the Delta region and Upper Egypt have different ways of life. The Delta region has spring 1), farming, and crafts. Upper Egypt has 2) festivals, 3) and colorful carpets. People wear special clothes. They all love their culture and 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Egypt has two famous regions: the Delta region in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. In the Delta region, people celebrate the Spring Festival with decorations and food. They grow rice and cotton, and many people work in factories. In Upper Egypt, people make pottery and carpets by hand. They also celebrate the sugar cane harvest. People wear different clothes in both places, but they all love their traditions and celebrate their culture with joy.

1) Choose the correct answer.

- The general idea of the text is about two famous regions.
a) China's b) Egypt's c) Japan's d) America's
- Egyptians love their
a) factories b) carpets c) traditions d) songs

3) Answer the following questions.

- Where do people work in the Delta region?
- What do people in Upper Egypt make by hand?

5 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Upper Egypt

Guiding elements:

(celebrate - harvest - pottery)

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing: A Diary Entry

Think and create: A poster

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

diary entry	مذكرات / يوميات	old	قديم
neighborhood	حي سكني	history	تاريخ
train station	محطة قطار	rich	غني
ago	منذ	then	في ذلك الوقت
stand	يقف / قائم / يوجد	grandpa	الجد

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

building	مبنى	different	مختلف
wooden stall	كشك خشبي	photo	صورة
look like	يشبه	farm	مزرعة
amazing	مذهل	supermarket	سوبر ماركت
shopping mall	مول تجاري	street	شارع
market	سوق	safely	بأمان
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	plastic	بلاستيك
proud of	فخور بـ	clean	نظيف
proud to + inf.	فخور بأن	difference	اختلاف

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	see	يرى	saw
sell	يبيع	sold	say	يقول	said
tell	يخبر	told	cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
show	يوضح / يعرض	showed	build	يبني	built

Lessons (4 & 5)

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

"What stories do old buildings tell us?"

ما القصة التي تحكيها لنا المباني القديمة؟

March 15, 2025

Dear diary,

Today, Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's **history**. Fifty **years ago**, our **neighborhood** was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful **old** market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning.



The tall buildings **weren't here then**. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played safely in the streets. There was even a small **train station** where our park is now!

Grandpa showed me **old photos**. I saw the **old school** that still **stands** today. He said people helped to build it together many **years ago**. It makes me proud to know our community has such **a rich history**.

Yours truly,

Hana

15 مارس 2025

مدفاتي العزيزة

اليوم، حدثني جدي عن قصص رائعة حول تاريخ مجتمعنا. قبل خمسين عامًا، كان حيّنا مختلفًا تمامًا! ففي المكان الذي يوجد فيه السوبر ماركت الكبير الآن، كان هناك سوق قديم جميل بأكشاك خشبية وكان الناس يبيعون الخضروات والفواكه الطازجة كل صباح. لم تكن المباني العالية موجودة آنذاك، وبدلاً من ذلك كانت هناك منازل صغيرة وحدائق جميلة. كان الجميع يعرفون جيرانهم، وكان الأطفال يلعبون بأمان في الشوارع. بل وكان هناك محطة قطار صغيرة في المكان الذي تقع فيه حديقتنا الآن! أراني جدي صورًا قديمة، فرأيت المدرسة القديمة التي لا تزال قائمة حتى اليوم. قال إن الناس تعاونوا في بنائها منذ سنوات طويلة. أشعر بالفخر عندما أعلم أن لمجتمعنا تاريخًا غنيًا كهذا.

المخلص،

هنا



Writing skills

How to Write a Diary Entry

1. Start with the date:

Write the date at the top of your page.

كيفية كتابة اليوميات

ابدأ بكتابة التاريخ:

اكتب التاريخ في أعلى الصفحة.

2. Write a greeting:

The greeting can be "Dear diary," or "Hello diary,".

اكتب تحية:

يمكن أن تكون التحية مثل: «مذكراتي العزيزة» أو «مرحباً يا مذكراتي».

3. Add details:

Who you talked to, what you heard, and how you felt.

أضف تفاصيل

مع من تحدثت، وماذا سمعت، وكيف شعرت.

4. End with a closing:

Finish your diary with "Yours truly, and your name".

أنهي بخاتمة:

اختم مذكراتك بعبارة مثل: «المخلص، [اسمك]».



Model

July 15, 2025

Dear Diary,

Today I learned many interesting things about my community's past. A long time ago, people used to live in small mud houses and worked as farmers or craftsmen. There were no cars or tall buildings like today.

Back then, there were only a few shops and one small school. Now we have many schools, parks, and hospitals. The old market is now a big shopping center. Some old houses are gone, but one beautiful mosque still stands.

I feel proud because my community worked hard to grow and become better. People helped each other and took care of their land and families.

I want to know more about the people who built the first school and how life was during special celebrations long ago.

Yours truly,

Mahmoud

Project: Poster

1 Look at the poster about ways to stop air pollution.

انظر إلى الملصق الذي يتحدث عن طرق وقف تلوث الهواء.

Let's Stop Air Pollution

Solutions

Walk or cycle to school.

اذهب إلى المدرسة سيراً على الأقدام أو باستخدام الدراجة.



Plant trees in your community.

ازرع الأشجار في مجتمعك.



Use less plastic.

استخدم كمية أقل من البلاستيك.



Keep your community clean.

حافظ على نظافة مجتمعك.



2 Work in groups to make a poster.

اعملوا في مجموعات لصنع ملصق.

Make a poster about ways to solve a community problem.

اصنع ملصقاً عن طرق حل مشكلة في المجتمع.

1. Choose a problem in your community.
2. Find information for your poster.
3. Design your poster.

اختر مشكلة في مجتمعك.

اجمع معلومات لملصقك.

صمم ملصقك.

Your poster should include:

يجب أن يتضمن ملصقك ما يلي:

- a. A clear title
- b. Pictures or drawings
- c. 2-3 solutions

أ. عنوان واضح

ب. صور أو رسومات

ج. حلان إلى ثلاثة حلول

Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- told me amazing stories about our community's history.
a) Dad b) Mom c) Grandpa d) Grandma
- Fifty years ago, there was a market.
a) wooden b) plastic c) glass d) iron
- People sold fresh and vegetables.
a) water b) fruits c) oil d) clothes
- There were houses.
a) tall b) big c) small d) huge

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I learn about my community's
a) history b) English c) Arabic d) math
- Our was very different.
a) neighbors b) people c) neighborhood d) buildings
- There was a small train
a) school b) stall c) park d) station
- The old school still today.
a) moves b) tells c) stands d) does
- Grandpa us old photos.
a) read b) said c) showed d) built

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

train station - photos - proud - stands - history

Grandpa showed me old photos. I saw the old school that still

- today. He said people helped to build it together many years ago. It makes me
- to know our community has such a rich
- There was even a small
- where our park is now!

Lessons (4 & 5)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Today, Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, our neighborhood was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful old market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning. The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played safely in the streets. There was even a small train station where our park is now!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The text is about our history.
a) community's b) park's c) school's d) zoo's
- Children played in the streets.
a) slowly b) badly c) safely d) quickly

B) Answer the following questions.

- What did people sell in the old market?
- Where was the small train station?

5 Write a diary entry about your community's history.

اكتب يوميات عن تاريخ مجتمعتك.

Guiding elements:

- What did you learn about your community's past?
- What was different then? What buildings or places changed?
- What makes you proud of your community's history?
- What more do you want to know?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Review on Unit (2)

Vocabulary

collect	يجمع	plant	يزرع	clean	نظيف
volunteer	يتطوع	problem	مشكلة	solution	حل
trash	قمامة	traffic	الازدحام المروري	bin	صندوق القمامة
ground	الأرض	Egypt	مصر	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر
the Delta	الدلتا	north	شمال	south	جنوب
culture	ثقافة	sugar cane	قصب السكر	celebrate	يحتفل
history	تاريخ	neighborhood	حي سكني	train station	محطة قطار

Pronunciation

v		/f/	
van	شاحنة صغيرة	factory	مصنع
vest	سترة - صديري	flag	علم
violin	آلة الكمان	frog	ضفدع
view	منظر طبيعي	forest	غابة

Language

Present Simple "Negative / Question"

Negative:

(I / We / You / They / A plural noun) + don't + inf.

- I **don't** eat meat.

(He / She / It / A singular noun) + doesn't + inf.

- He **doesn't** go to school by car.

Yes / No question:

(Do + I / we / you / they / a plural noun) + inf. ...?

- **Do** you wear galabeyas? - Yes, we **do**. - No, we **don't**.

(Does + he / she / it / a singular noun) + inf. ...?

- **Does** Heba help her community? - Yes, she **does**. - No, she **doesn't**.



Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

Helping the community

I help my community every week. I clean trash from the streets with my friends. I also plant trees in the park. I feel so happy when I help.

Community problems and solutions

There is traffic near schools. Cars don't move fast in the morning. I think using the school bus is better. There is also trash. People now use bins to keep the street clean.

The Delta and Upper Egypt

In Egypt, the Delta region and Upper Egypt have different ways of life. Delta has spring festivals, farming, and crafts. Upper Egypt has sugar cane festivals, pottery, and colorful carpets. People love their culture and traditions.

My community's history

Grandma told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, there was a wooden market. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables. There were small houses. The old school still stands there now.

Let's stop air pollution

We should do many things to stop air pollution. We can cycle or walk to school. We can plant trees. We can use less plastic. We should keep our community clean.

Dictation on Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

قمامة	يجمع
يطعم	يساعد
ينظف	يزرع
مجتمع	يتطوع
شارع	جيران
ملابس	حديقة / منزه

Lesson (2)

الازدحام المروري	مشكلة
صندوق القمامة	بدلاً من ذلك
يرمي	يحل
متسخ - قدر	حل
يتحرك	يصلح
قمامة	الأرض

Lesson (3)

سفرة / صديري	مصر
مصنع	شمال
ضفدع	جنوب
غابة	تقاليد
علم	الدلتا
آلة الكمان	صعيد مصر
منظر طبيعي	ملابس

Lessons (4 & 5)

محطة قطار	يوميات
قديم	منذ
الجد	يقف
غني	تاريخ
كشك خشبي	حي سكني

Activities On Unit 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Adam loves helping his
a) grandpa b) grandma c) community d) cousins
- Adam trash from the street.
a) cleans b) helps c) eats d) drinks
- He also plants trees in the
a) school b) park c) hospital d) library
- He hungry dogs and cats.
a) eats b) collects c) feeds d) plays

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We flowers and trees.
a) plant b) clean c) feed d) help
- The dog always after eating all the food.
a) irregular b) illegal c) disappears d) dishonest

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

designs - traditional - painted - celebrate - pottery

In Upper Egypt, life is different. People 1) the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make 2) and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing 3) songs and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Yesterday, Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, our neighborhood was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful old market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning. The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played safely in the streets.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Yesterday, Grandpa told me amazing
a) stories b) plays c) films d) books
2. Fifty years , our neighborhood was very different.
a) yesterday b) ago c) last d) today

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did people sell?
4. Were there tall buildings?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Ali (don't) throw trash in the bin.
2. (Does) they plant trees?
3. Do you (helps) at your community?
4. Aya doesn't (eats) in the classroom.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- you should walk or cycle to school

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your community's history

Guiding elements:

(neighbourhood - old markets - fruits)

Al-Azhar Corner

1

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

plant - community - feed - streets

- Amira : Hello, Adam! What do you do to help our 1).....?
- Adam : Hello, Amira! I clean trash from the 2)..... with my friends .
- Amira : That's cool! Do you 3)..... trees?
- Adam : Yes, I do. I plant trees in the park.
- Amira : That's nice! Do you do other things to help?
- Adam : Yes! Sometimes I 4)..... the dogs and cats.

2

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

school bus - traffic - problems - solve

- Ali : Hi, Mona! Our community has many 1).....
- Mona : Really? Can you tell me one of these problems?
- Ali : The 2)..... problem. Cars don't move fast in the morning.
- Mona : How can we 3)..... this?
- Ali : We can take the 4)..... instead of using cars.
- Mona : That's a good idea!

3

Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. celebrate - harvest - People - cane - the sugar - .

2. noise - dislikes - He - loud - .

3. do - help - community - do - What - you - to - your - ?

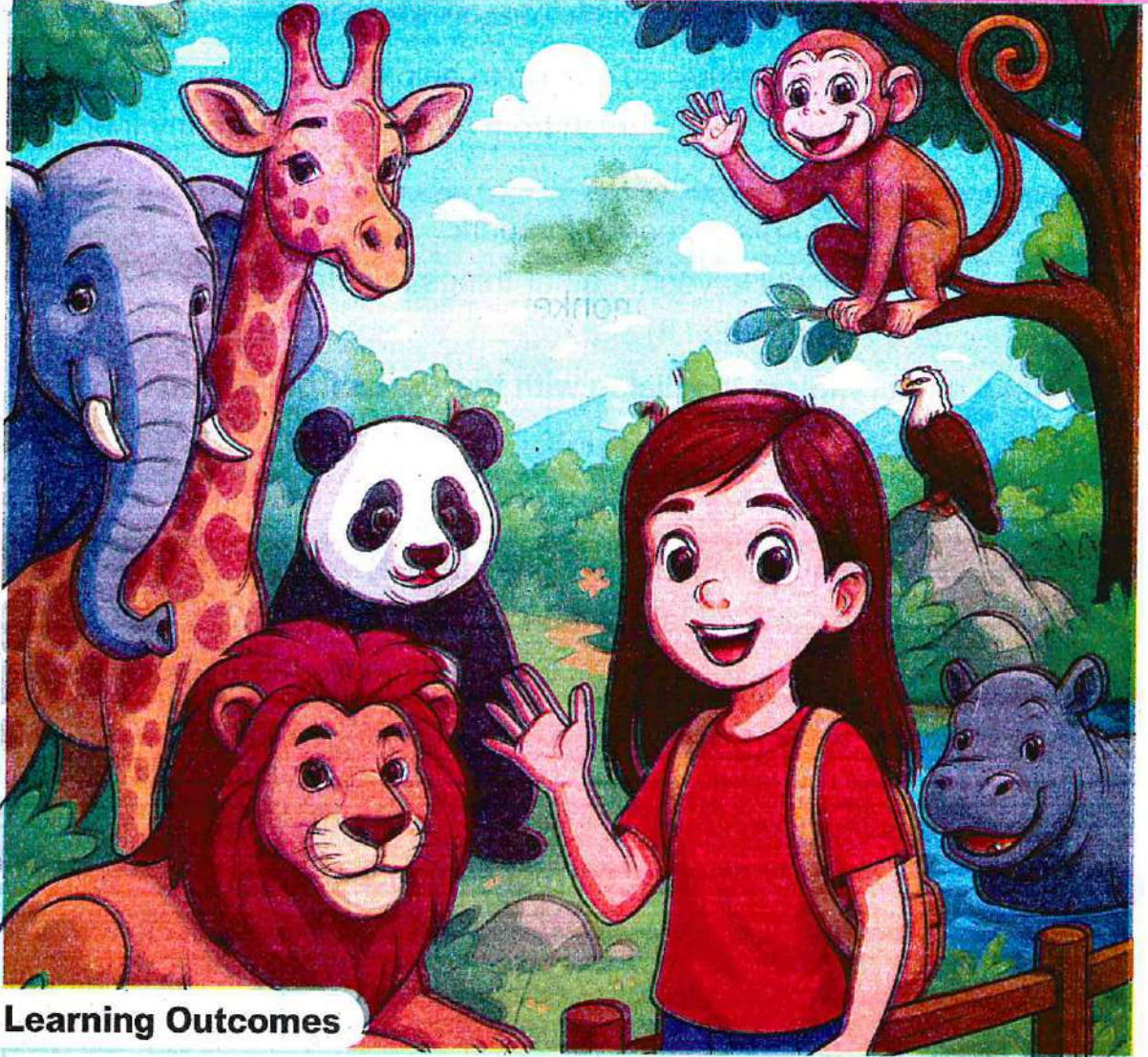
4. quickly - don't - Cars - move - schools - near - .

5. this - your - Does - have - problem - street - ?

Unit 3

Animals in Our World

الحيوانات في عالمنا



Learning Outcomes

Speaking

Describe animals and their daily habits

صف الحيوانات وعاداتها اليومية

Use comparative adjectives to compare different animals

استخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين الحيوانات المختلفة

Identify animals' habits in a simple text

تعرف على عادات الحيوانات في نص بسيط

Reading

Identify a short story with a moral lesson to get the main idea

تعرف على قصة قصيرة تحتوي على عبرة لاستخلاص الفكرة الرئيسية

Discuss the moral lessons in a short story

ناقش الدروس الأخلاقية المستفادة من قصة قصيرة

Listening

Understand basic conversations about animals

افهم محادثات أساسية حول الحيوانات

Discriminate between the consonant blends /fr/ /dr/ /pl/

ميز بين تراكيب الحروف الساكنة /fr/ /dr/ و /pl/

Writing

Draft a basic report about endangered animals

صغ تقريرًا أساسيًا عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض

Plan a research project about a forest animal

خطط لمشروع بحثي حول حيوان يعيش في الغابة

Lesson (1) Let's Meet the Animals!

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



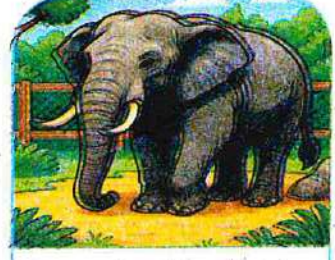
lion

أسد



monkey

قرد



elephant

فيل



giraffe

زرافة



zebra

حمار وحشي



bear

دب

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

forest park	منتزه الغابة	program	برنامج	neck	عنق / رقبة
forest guide	مرشد الغابة	amazing	مدهش / مذهل	ears	آذان
visitor	زائر	close (adj) = near	قريب	tail	ذيل
leaves	أوراق الشجر	claws	مخالب	coat	فرو / طبقة
jungle	أدغال	fur	فرو	trunk	خرطوم الفيل (زلومة)

Adjectives

صفات

a striped coat	فرو مخطط	a long tail	ذيل طويل
a heavy trunk	خرطوم ثقيل	spotted coat	فرو منقط
thick fur	فرو سميك	sharp claws	مخالب حادة

Unit (3)

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
work يعمل	worked	hunt يصطاد	hunted
climb يتسلق	climbed	watch يشاهد	watched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
show يعرض / يرى	showed	sleep ينام	slept
go يذهب	went	eat يأكل	ate
drink يشرب	drank	know يعرف	knew

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

That's interesting!	هذا مثير للاهتمام!	Would you like to...?	هل تود أن؟
That's right!	هذا صحيح!	lots of	كثير من
as well = too	أيضًا	at night	بالليل
catch fish	يصطاد السمك	during the day	أثناء النهار
hunt animals	يصطاد الحيوانات	go with	يذهب مع

Animals' Description

وصف الحيوانات

The giraffe	It has a spotted coat. It eats leaves from tall trees.
The bear	It has thick fur and sharp claws. It catches fish.
The monkey	It is small and has a long tail. It climbs trees.
The zebra	It has a striped coat. It runs in groups.
The lion	It has yellow fur. It hunts animals at night.
The elephant	It is big and gray. It uses its trunk to spray water on its body.

Lesson (1)

"A Day at the Forest Park" يوم في المنتزه

Listen and read.

استمع واقراً.

Omar and Nadia are talking about animals at the forest park.

يتحدث عمر ونادية عن الحيوانات في متنزه الغابة.

Omar Hi, Nadia! What does your dad do at the forest park?

مرحباً يا نادية! ماذا يعمل والدك في حديقة الغابة؟

Nadia He works as a forest guide. He shows visitors the animals.

يعمل كمرشد غابة. يُري الزوّار الحيوانات.

Omar Do you usually go with him?

هل تذهبن معه عادة؟

Nadia Sometimes.

أحياناً.

Omar What animals do visitors see?

ما الحيوانات التي يراها الزوّار؟

Nadia Lots of them! They see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees.

الكثير منها! يرون الأفيال وهي تشرب الماء والقردة وهي تتسلق الأشجار.

Omar That's interesting! Do they see lions, too?

هذا ممتع! هل يرون الأسود أيضاً؟

Nadia Yes, and giraffes as well.

نعم، والزرافات أيضاً.

Omar Lions often hunt at night and sleep during the day. Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.

الأسود تصطاد غالباً في الليل وتنام خلال النهار. والزرافات تأكل أوراق الأشجار العالية.

Nadia That's right! How do you know all of this?

هذا صحيح! من أين عرفت كل هذا؟

Omar I watch a TV program about animals.

أشاهد برنامجاً تلفزيونياً عن الحيوانات.

Nadia Would you like to visit the forest park?

هل تود زيارة حديقة الغابة؟

Omar Sure! It must be amazing to see all those animals up close.

بالتأكيد! لا بد أن رؤية كل تلك الحيوانات عن قرب أمر رائع.



Listen again and answer:

استمع مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

1. What does Nadia's dad do at the forest park?
2. Does Nadia always go with her dad to the forest park?
3. When do lions often hunt?

Activities On Lesson 1

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Dad works at the
a) forest park b) school c) bank d) garden
2. He works as a forest
a) guide b) teacher c) driver d) guard
3. Giraffes eat
a) meat b) fish c) birds d) leaves
4. hunt at night.
a) Lions b) Monkeys c) Visitors d) Zebras

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The elephant lots of water.
a) drinks b) hunts c) eats d) plays
2. The monkey trees.
a) drinks b) climbs c) goes d) hunts
3. The zebra in groups.
a) catches b) runs c) climbs d) sleeps
4. The bear fish.
a) hunts b) makes c) catches d) kills
5. The elephant has a heavy
a) trunk b) hand c) fur d) tail
6. The monkey has a tail.
a) short b) small c) long d) tall
7. Lions often hunt at
a) day b) night c) morning d) week
8. eat leaves from tall trees.
a) Lions b) Zebras c) Giraffes d) Bears
9. The bear has thick fur and claws.
a) sharp b) thick c) short d) small
10. The zebra has a coat.
a) spotted b) striped c) long d) sharp

Lesson (1)

3

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

climb – elephants – park – night – runs

Nadia's dad is a forest guide. He works at the forest 1)
He shows visitors animals. The 2) drink a lot of water.
The monkeys can 3) trees. Lions hunt at 4) and
sleep during the day.

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar asks Nadia about her dad's job. She says he is a forest guide and he shows animals to visitors. Sometimes, she goes with him. Visitors see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees. Omar asks about lions and giraffes. Nadia says they see them too. Omar knows that lions hunt at night, and giraffes eat leaves. Omar tells her he watches a TV program about animals. Omar wants to visit the forest park to see those animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Nadia's dad is a forest
a) guide b) teacher c) doctor d) guard
- can climb trees.
a) Lions b) Elephants c) Giraffes d) Monkey

B) Answer the following questions.

- When do lions hunt?
- What do giraffes eat?

5

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن

Animals

Guiding words:

(lions - hunt - giraffes - leaves)

Lesson (2)

Taking Care of Animals

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

pets	حيوانات أليفة	clean	نظيف	stronger	أقوى
the wild	البرية	safe	آمن	rabbits	أرانب
care	رعاية	home	بيت / موطن	fresh	طازج
attention	اهتمام	owner	مالك	forest officer	حارس الغابة
space	مساحة	cage	قفص	vet	طبيب بيطري

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
avoid	يتجنب avoided	check	يفحص checked
exercise	يتمرن / يمرن exercised	protect	يحمي protected
need	يحتاج needed	create	ينشئ / يخلق created

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
keep	يحافظ على kept	teach	يعلم taught

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

take care of	يعتني بـ	(keep / stay) healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
move around	يتجول	special care	رعاية خاصة
face challenges	يواجه تحديات	move around	يتجول / يتحرك بسهولة
daily care	رعاية يومية	acts of kindness	أعمال العطف "الخير"
give advice	يقدم النصيحة	check health	يفحص الصحة

Definitions

تعريفات

owners	they have pets or animals at home.	ملاك
vets	they often check animals' health.	أطباء بيطريين
forest officers	they work hard to protect animals and their homes.	حراس الغابة

Lesson (2)

استمع واقرأ

Listen and read.

Helping Animals

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe.

Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal **needs special care** to live well.

تحتاج الحيوانات إلى مساعدتنا لتبقى بصحة جيدة وفي أمان. فبعضها يعيش في البرية، بينما يعيش البعض الآخر في حدائق الحيوان أو في المنازل. وكل حيوان يحتاج إلى رعاية خاصة ليعيش بشكل جيد.

Zoo animals need special attention. **Elephants need**

bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. **Lions eat**

a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. **Giraffes**

need taller trees to reach their food. **Vets** often check their health.

تحتاج حيوانات الحدائق إلى عناية خاصة. فالأفيال تحتاج إلى مساحات أكبر من القردة لتتحرك بحرية. وتأكل الأسود كميات كبيرة من الطعام لتبقى أقوى من الحيوانات الأخرى. وتحتاج الزرافات إلى أشجار أطول لتصل إلى طعامها. ويقوم الأطباء البيطريون غالبًا بفحص صحتهم.

Wild animals face different **challenges**. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. They **need clean** water and **safe places** to live. **Forest officers** now work harder than before to protect these animals and their homes.

تواجه الحيوانات البرية تحديات مختلفة؛ فمواطنها أصبحت أصغر بسبب المدن الجديدة. وهي تحتاج إلى مياه نظيفة وأماكن آمنة لتعيش فيها. يعمل حراس الغابات الآن بجهد أكبر من ذي قبل لحماية هذه الحيوانات ومواطنها.

Pets need daily care from their **owners**. **Dogs** need some exercise. **Rabbits**

eat fresh vegetables, and they are healthier than other animals. **Birds** need

cleaner cages than other **animals**.

تحتاج الحيوانات الأليفة إلى رعاية يومية من أصحابها. تحتاج الكلاب إلى بعض التمارين. تأكل الأرانب الخضروات الطازجة، وهي أكثر صحة من الحيوانات الأخرى. تحتاج الطيور إلى أقفاص أنظف من أقفاص الحيوانات الأخرى.

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small acts of kindness make our world better. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives happier and healthier.

يمكن للجميع المساهمة في حماية الحيوانات بطرق بسيطة. فأعمال الخير الصغيرة تجعل عالمنا أفضل. وعندما نهتم بالحيوانات، نُوفّر لها بيئة أكثر أمانًا. إن التصرف بلطف مع الحيوانات يعلمنا أن نكون أشخاصًا أفضل. معًا، يمكننا أن نجعل حياتهم أكثر سعادة وصحة.



Language in use

Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

- 🕒 We use **comparative adjectives** to compare two people, things, animals, etc. نستخدم صفات المقارنة لنقارن بين اثنين من الأشخاص أو الأشياء أو الحيوانات، إلخ.

Form التكوين

adj. (صفة) + er + than

- tall → taller
- clean → cleaner

Example: A giraffe is **taller than** a zebra.



Spelling rules قواعد الهجاء

- ① If an adjective ends in a vowel and a consonant, **double the consonant** before you add **(er)**.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك، نُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم نضيف (er).

- bi → bigger
- ho → hotter

Example: Bears are **bigger than** dogs.

- ② If an adjective ends in **(e)**, we add **(r)** to the end of the adjective.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e)، نضيف (r) فقط إلى نهاية الصفة.

- safe → safer
- nice → nicer

Example: Cats are **safer than** lions.

- ③ If an adjective ends in a **consonant and (y)**, **change (y) to (i)** and add **(er)**.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y)، وقبله حرف ساكن، نحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er).

- healthy → healthier
- lazy → lazier

Example: Rabbits are **healthier than** other animals.

Ⓜ لاحظ

There are some **irregular adjectives**. يوجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة "يتغير شكلها".

good → better than

bad → worse than



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Elephants need spaces than monkeys.
a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) the biggest
2. Giraffes need trees to reach their food.
a) taller b) tallest c) as tall d) tall as
3. Forest officers work than before to protect these animals.
a) hard b) harder c) the hardest d) hardest
4. Birds need cages than other animals.
a) clean b) cleanest c) cleaner d) as clean
5. The lion is than the dog.
a) strong b) stronger c) strongest d) as strong
6. Rabbits are than other animals.
a) healthy b) healthier c) as healthy d) healthiest
7. Ahmed is taller Omar.
a) as b) than c) then d) the
8. Camels are than dogs.
a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tallest

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. A cheetah is (fast) than a turtle.
2. Elephants are (big) than monkeys.
3. The weather today is (cold) than yesterday.
4. Omar is (tall) than his brother.
5. Marwa is (lazy) than her sister.
6. Rabbits are (healthy) than other animals.
7. Summer is (hot) than winter.
8. My room is cleaner (then) my sister's.
9. English is (good) than Chinese.
10. Omar is (bad) at math than Mazen.

Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Animals need our to stay healthy.
a) money b) help c) home d) space
2. Some animals live in the
a) wild b) water c) trees d) house
3. Other animals live in or homes.
a) schools b) banks c) zoos d) woods
4. Each animal needs special to live well.
a) car b) care c) food d) spaces

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Wild animals face different
a) challenges b) vegetables c) trees d) care
2. often check animals' health.
a) Teachers b) Vets c) Forest officers d) Owners
3. We must take of animals.
a) car b) exercise c) care d) help
4. Zoo animals need special
a) attention b) food c) challenges d) money
5. Small acts of make our world better.
a) kind b) cities c) kindness d) trees
6. Birds need cleaner than other animals.
a) cages b) boxes c) tanks d) cars
7. Forest work hard to protect animals.
a) vets b) officers c) cleaners d) doctors
8. Rabbits eat vegetables.
a) bad b) big c) fresh d) cheap
9. We should exercise our every day.
a) pets b) money c) cars d) fish

Lesson (2)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

Vets - spaces - stronger - food - challenges

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger 1)
an monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay 2)
an other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. 3)
ten check their health. Wild animals face different 4) Their
omes are getting smaller because of new cities.

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Pets need daily care from their owners. Dogs need some exercise.
abbits eat fresh vegetables. They are healthier than other animals. Birds
eed cleaner cages than other animals. Everyone can help protect animals
simple ways. Small acts of kindness make our world better. When we
are for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals
aches us to be better people.

Choose the correct answer.

Pets need care from their owners.

- a) weekly b) daily c) yearly d) monthly

..... are healthier than other animals.

- a) Birds b) Fish c) Rabbits d) Dogs

Answer the following questions.

What do dogs need?

Why is being kind to animals important?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

A giraffe is (tall) than a zebra.

Dad is (old) than my mom.

The elephant is (heavy) than the dog.

Ali is (fit) than Omar.

Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

how should we exercise our pets

Lesson (3)

Story Time

The Old Lion and The Fox

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

fox	ثعلب	footprints	آثار أقدام
trick	خدعة / يخدع	moral	العبرة / الدرس المستفاد
sick	مريض	mistakes	أخطاء
cave	كهف	in danger	في خطر

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

once	ذات مرة	near	قريب
surface	سطح	anymore	لم يعد / بعد الآن
wise	حكيم	fluffy	ناعم / رقيق
entrance	مدخل	others	الآخرون
safely	بأمان	hole	ثقب / حفرة / فتحة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
pretend يتظاهر / يدعى	pretend ed	laugh يضحك	laugh ed
call out يُنادي بصوت عالٍ	call ed out	return يعود / يرجع	return ed
die يموت	die d	notice يلاحظ	notice d
hunt يصطاد	hunt ed	trick يخدع	trick ed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
catch يصطاد / يُمسك	caught	stand يقف	stood
think يفكر / يعتقد	thought	run away يهرب	ran away
lie يستلقي / يرقد	lay	come out يخرج	came out
hear يسمع	heard	leave يترك / يغادر	left

Lesson (3)

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

search for food	يصطاد من أجل الغذاء	How are you feeling?	كيف حالك؟
one by one	واحدًا تلو الآخر	go into	يدخل
one of them	لا أحد منهم	come out	يخرج
run away	يهرب	learn from	يتعلم من

Definitions

تعريفات

fox	is a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur.	ثعلب
cave	is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live.	كهف
footprints	are marks left by feet.	آثار أقدام
hunt	to look for and catch animals for food	يصطاد
pretended	acted like something is true when it isn't	تظاهر / ادعى
lay down	put yourself on a surface, like the ground or a bed	استلقى / رقد

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

The Beginning

Once there was an old **lion** who couldn't **hunt** anymore. He was too **weak** to **catch** animals for food. So, he thought of a clever **trick**.

في يوم من الأيام، كان هناك أسد عجوز لم يعد قادرًا على الصيد. فقد أصبح ضعيفًا جدًا ولا يستطيع صيد الحيوانات ليأكل. فخطر بباله حيلة ذكية.

The Middle

The lion went into his cave and **pretended** to be very sick. He lay down and called out, "Oh! I am so sick! Please, come visit me before I die!"

دخل الأسد كهفه وتظاهر بأنه مريض جدًا. استلقى على الأرض وبدأ ينادي قائلاً: «آه! إنني مريض جدًا! من فضلكم، زوروني قبل أن أموت!»

Many **animals** heard about the sick lion. One by one, they went into his **cave** to visit him. But none of them came out! The lion was **catching** and **eating** each visitor.

سمعت الحيوانات بخبر مرض الأسد. وبدأت تزوره واحدة تلو الأخرى داخل الكهف. لكن لم يخرج أحد منهم! كان الأسد يمسك زائري ويأكلهم.



A wise fox came near the cave. He saw many footprints going in, but none coming out. The fox stood at the cave entrance and said, "Hello, dear lion! How are you feeling?"

"Oh, dear fox!" said the lion. "I am very sick. Please come in and visit me!"

اقترب ثعلب ذكي من الكهف. فرأى آثار أقدام كثيرة تدخل الكهف، لكن لم تكن هناك آثار تخرج منه. فوقف عند مدخل الكهف وقال: «مرحباً، أيها الأسد العزيز! كيف حالك؟» قال الأسد: «آه، أيها الثعلب العزيز! أنا مريض جداً. تفضل بالدخول لزيارتي!»

The End

The fox looked at the footprints again and replied, "Thank you, but I can see that many animals went into your cave, but none came out. I learn from the mistakes of others!"

نظر الثعلب مرة أخرى إلى آثار الأقدام، ورد قائلاً: «شكراً لك، لكنني أرى أن حيوانات كثيرة دخلت كهفك ولم يخرج منها أحد. أنا أتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين!»

And with that the wise fox ran away safely, laughing at the lion's trick.

وبذلك، فر الثعلب الحكيم بسلام وهو يضحك على خدعة الأسد.



Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The lion was young and strong. ()
2. The lion pretended to be sick. ()
3. The fox went into the cave. ()
4. The fox saw footprints going into the cave. ()
5. Many animals came out of the cave after visiting the lion. ()

Tip!

Many stories have a moral. The moral is the lesson a story teaches us. It helps us understand what is right and what is wrong.

تحتوي العديد من القصص على عبرة. والعبرة هي الدرس الذي نتعلمنا إياه القصة. فهي تساعدنا على فهم ما هو صواب وما هو خطأ.



What's the moral of this story?

ما العبرة من هذه القصة؟

It's important to learn from the mistakes of others.

من المهم أن نتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين.



Lesson (3)



Pronunciation

Consonant blends fr, dr and pl

- When you blend, you join one or more sounds together to read a word, like "drum" and "fruit".

عندما تدمج الأصوات، فأنت تقوم بضم صوتين أو أكثر معاً لقراءة كلمة مثل "drum" و "fruit".



Listen and say.



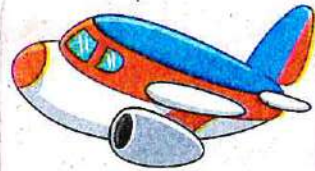
frown

يعبس



fruit

فاكهة



plane

طائرة



plant

نبات



draw

يرسم



drum

طبله



Listen and say.

- I can hit the drum easily.
- She has a nice plant in her room.
- Adam likes eating fruit every day.

Activities On Lesson 3

- 1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
- The pretended to be sick.
a) lion b) fox c) hen d) fish
 - Many animals went in but came out.
a) many b) some c) all d) none
 - A fox saw the footprints.
a) bad b) good c) wise d) big
 - The fox ran away
a) sadly b) badly c) quickly d) safely
- 2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.
- The is a small, quick animal with fluffy tail and red-brown fur.
a) fox b) lion c) elephant d) ant
 - The word means to look for and catch animals for food.
a) hunt b) lay down c) sick d) run
 - A is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live.
a) house b) home c) cave d) forest
 - The old lion was too weak to animals for food.
a) make b) take c) catch d) visit
 - The old lion to be very sick.
a) pretended b) went c) looked d) hunt
 - We should learn from the of others.
a) points b) goals c) mistakes d) heads
 - The wise fox ran away
a) safely b) sad c) badly d) lazily
 - The lion animals and ate them.
a) tracked b) tricked c) picked d) went
 - The fox stood at the cave
a) window b) table c) entrance d) chair
 - are marks left by feet.
a) Footprints b) Tricks c) Caves d) Fingerprints
 - She always when she is sad.
a) frowns b) laughs c) smiles d) fries

Lesson (3)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

pretended - cave - sick - hunt - footprints

There was an old lion. He was very weak and couldn't 1)
He tricked animals and 2) to be sick in his cave. He called to
the animals and asked them to visit him before he died. Many animals
entered and never returned. A wise fox noticed the one-way 3)
He didn't go into the 4) and ran away safely.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Once there was an old lion who couldn't hunt anymore because he
was too weak. He thought of a clever trick. The lion pretended to be sick and
called for animals to visit him. One by one, they went into his cave, but none
came out. A wise fox noticed the footprints and understood the trick. The fox
safely ran away, laughing at the lion's trick.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. There was an lion who couldn't hunt anymore.
a) old b) ugly c) big d) angry
2. The fox was and ran away.
a) good b) wise c) bad d) stupid

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why couldn't the lion hunt anymore?

4. What happened to the animals?

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

▶ oh! I am so sick

Lessons (4 & 5) Writing: A Research Report

Think and create: A Collage

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

research report	تقرير بحثي	The Arabian Leopard	النمر العربي
endangered animals	حيوانات مهددة بالانقراض	The Red Sea Dugong	الأطوم / أبقار البحر الأحمر
species	فصائل / أنواع	pollution	تلوث

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

forever	للأبد	gentle	لطيف
facts	حقائق	sea grass	أعشاب بحرية
Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	fishing nets	شباك الصيد
reason	سبب	collage	ملصق / لوحة
habitat	موطن / بيئة	overlap	تداخل / تشابك

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
protect	يحمي / يحمى	act	يتصرف
remain	يبقى / يظل	disappear	يختفي
stop	يوقف / يمنع	build	يبني
	protected	acted	
	remained	disappeared	
	stopped	built	

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in danger of = endangered	مهددة بالانقراض
less than	أقل من
adapt to	يتكيف مع
teach.....about	يعلم عن
facts about	حقائق عن

Lessons (4 & 5)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Endangered Animals

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered species. Here are some important facts about endangered animals.

العديد من الحيوانات حول العالم مهددة بالانقراض إلى الأبد. وتُعرف هذه الحيوانات باسم «الأنواع المهددة بالانقراض». إليك بعض الحقائق المهمة عن هذه الحيوانات.

The **Arabian Leopard** is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.



يُعد النمر العربي من أكثر الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض في مصر والشرق الأوسط. لم يتبق في البرية سوى أقل من 200 من هذه القطط الجميلة. ومن أسباب ذلك أن الناس يبنون منازل في المواطن الطبيعية التي تعيش فيها هذه الحيوانات، مما يعرضها للخطر.

The **Red Sea Dugong** is another endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.



أحد الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض في مصر أيضًا هو الأطوم في البحر الأحمر. هذه الكائنات البحرية اللطيفة تتغذى على الأعشاب البحرية. لكنها تواجه الخطر بسبب التلوث وشباك الصيد.

To help these animals, we need to:

لمساعدة هذه الحيوانات، نحتاج إلى:

Protect: their homes

حماية: مواطنها

Stop: pollution

إيقاف: التلوث

Create: safe areas

إنشاء: مناطق آمنة

Teach: people about them

توعية: الناس بهم

If we don't act now, these amazing animals could disappear forever.

إذا لم نتحرك الآن، فقد تختفي هذه الحيوانات الرائعة إلى الأبد.

Writing Skills

A Good Report التقرير الجيد

A good report has

يحتوي التقرير الجيد على

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|-------|
| 1 clear title | عنوان واضح | 2 introduction | مقدمة |
| 3 facts and information | حقائق ومعلومات | 4 examples | أمثلة |
| 5 solutions | حلول | 6 conclusion | خاتمة |

 Read and learn.

- | | | |
|----------|---------------------|---|
| 1 | Title | Endangered Animals |
| 2 | Introduction | Many animals are in danger of disappearing. |
| 3 | Examples | The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal. |
| 4 | Solution | To help these animals, stop pollution. |

Model Report

Title: The Nubian ibex

Introduction Write and describe the animal you chose.

Many animals in Egypt are in danger of disappearing forever. The Nubian Ibex is one of them. It's an interesting animal. It can adapt to living in dry and hot areas.

Paragraph 1 Write about why it's endangered.

It's endangered because people destroy its natural habitat.

Paragraph 2 Write about how we can help them.

To help these animals, we need to:

- protect their homes
- create safe areas

Conclusion Write about what will happen if we don't save them.

If we don't act now, these amazing animals will disappear forever.

Project: A Collage

A collage is an artwork made by cutting and pasting photos, paper, cloth, or drawings on a page.

اللوحة التجميعية هي عمل فني يُصنع بقص الصور أو الورق أو القماش أو الرسومات ولصقها على صفحة.

First

Find and cut out photos of endangered animals.

Then

Glue them together.
(the pictures are allowed to overlap)

Collage



Make your collage and show it to your partner. Ask for their feedback.



"Do you like it?"

Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Arabian is an endangered animal.
a) Cow b) Leopard c) Zebra d) Lion
- It lives in and the Middle East.
a) Egypt b) London c) Britain d) Paris
- Less than of them remain in the wild.
a) 100 b) 200 c) 400 d) 500
- People build in the leopards' habitats.
a) homes b) villas c) shops d) houses

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We should animals.
a) protect b) kill c) stop d) disappear
- Many animals are in of disappearing forever.
a) dangerous b) danger c) case d) endanger
- People build houses in animals'
a) habitat b) habits c) hotels d) forests
- The Dugong eats sea
a) wood b) grass c) flowers d) fish
- We need to safe areas for animals.
a) stop b) create c) take d) use

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

save - Endangered - protect - animals - disappear

Endangered animals like the Arabian Leopard and the Red Sea Dugong need our help. We must 1) their homes and stop pollution. Teaching people about these 2) is important. If we don't act now, these amazing creatures might 3) from our planet forever. Let's work together to 4) them.

Lessons (4 & 5)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered species. Here are some important facts about endangered animals. The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

1) Choose the correct answer.

- Many animals are in danger of
a) caring b) saving c) disappearing d) growing
- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
a) grass b) nets c) Red Sea Dugongs d) species

3) Answer the following questions.

1. What is the text about?

2. What do dugongs eat?

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

we should protect animals

6 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

An endangered animal

Guiding elements:

(Dugong - sea grass - pollution)



Review on Unit (3)

Vocabulary

lion	أسد	forest guide	مرشد الغابة	catch animals	يصطاد حيوانات
monkey	قرد	vet	طبيب بيطري	trick	يخدع / خدعة
elephant	فيل	forest officer	حارس الغابة	footprints	آثار أقدام
giraffe	زرافة	owner	مالك	hunt	يصطاد
zebra	حمار وحشي	cage	قفص	cave	كهف
bear	دب	sick	مريض	lay down	رقد / استلقى
endangered	مهدد بالانقراض	protect	يحمي	in danger	في خطر

Pronunciation

frown	يعبس	plane	طائرة	draw	يرسم
fruit	فاكهة	plant	نبات	drum	طبل

Language

Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

- We use **comparative adjectives** to compare two people, things, animals, etc.

نستخدم صفات المقارنة بين اثنين من الأشخاص أو الأشياء أو الحيوانات، إلخ.

adj. + er + than

Example: A giraffe is **taller than** a zebra.

Bears are **bigger than** dogs.

Rabbits are **healthier than** other animals.

Today is **colder than** yesterday.



Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

The giraffe

The giraffe is an interesting animal. It has a spotted coat. It eats leaves from tall trees. It lives in the forest. It has a long neck.

Helping animals

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Elephants need big spaces. Giraffes need tall trees. Birds need clean cages.

The Arabian leopard

The Arabian Leopard is an endangered animal. It lives in Egypt and the Middle East. They are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

The Forest Park

Dad works as a forest guide at the Forest Park. He shows visitors the animals. They see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees. I want to visit the Forest Park one day.

Taking care of Pets

Pets need daily care from their owners. Dogs need some exercise. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables. Birds need clean cages. Fish need clean tanks.

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

حيوانات	حمار وحشى
أسد	دُب
قرد	خرطوم الفيل
فيل	فرو مخطط
ررافة	يتسلق الشجر
يصطاد أسماك	أوراق الشجر

Lesson (2)

يعتنى بـ	حارس الغابة
بصحة جيدة	يحمى
رعاية خاصة	مالك
قوى	قفص
طبيب بيطري	أعمال العطف
تحديات	رعاية يومية

Lesson (3)

ثعلب	آثار أقدام
ضعيف	حكيم
خدعة	يتعلم
يتظاهر / يدعى	يدخل
مريض	أخطاء
كهف	يهرب

Lessons (4 & 5)

بحث	الأطوم
مهدد بالانقراض	لطيف
أنواع	أعشاب بحرية
النمر العربي	تلوث
سبب	شباك الصيد

Activities On Unit 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Zoo animals need special
 a) food b) attention c) care d) help
2. Elephants need spaces than monkeys.
 a) smaller b) taller c) bigger d) cleaner
3. eat a lot of food.
 a) Lions b) Monkeys c) Cats d) Vets
4. often check their health.
 a) Doctors b) Nurses c) Vets d) Lions

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Lions at night and sleep during the day.
 a) play b) hunt c) climb d) jump
2. I learn from the of others.
 a) mistakes b) goals c) games d) pets

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

kind – care – acts – safer – bad

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small 1) kindness make our world better. When we 2) for animals, we create a 3) place for them. Being 4) to animals teaches us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives happier and healthier.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Once there was an old lion in a forest who couldn't hunt anymore. He was too weak, so he thought of a clever trick. He pretended to be very sick and called for animals to visit him. One by one, animals went into his cave, but none came out. A wise fox saw the footprints and realized the lion's trick. The fox didn't go in and ran away safely, laughing at the lion's plan. The wise fox stayed safe by learning from the mistakes of others.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The old lion was too to hunt.
a) weak b) strong c) big d) small
- The underlined pronoun "him" refers to the
a) fox b) forest c) lion d) trick

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is the setting of the story?
- What is the moral of the story?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- A mouse is (small) than a rabbit.
- A cheetah is (fast) than a turtle.
- Eating vegetables is (healthy) than eating junk food.
- The elephant is (big) than the horse.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- animals need our help

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The lion

Guiding elements:

(strong - fur - hunt - sleep)

Al-Azhar Corner

1

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

visitors - guide - Lots - What

- omar : What does your dad do?
 adia : He works as a forest 1).....
 omar : What does he show 2)..... ?
 adia : He shows them the animals.
 omar : 3)..... animals do the visitors see?
 adia : 4)..... of them.

2

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

walk - sick - Yes - Did

- li : Hello, Maher. How are you feeling?
 laher : I'm so 1).....
 li : What's wrong?
 laher : I can't 2).....
 li : 3)..... you see a doctor?
 laher : 4)....., I did.
 li : I hope you get better soon.

3

Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

fox - ran - The wise - safely - away - .

climb - The monkey - can - trees - .

need - Animals - help - our - .

should - exercise - How - we - pets - our - ?

has - The - heavy - bear - fur - .

Activities On Review 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. It's important to have a routine.
a) daily b) weekly c) monthly d) yearly
2. Healthy habits help me stay
a) weak b) happy c) strong d) sad
3. I my face and get dressed for school.
a) brush b) take c) wash d) clean
4. I have and fruit for breakfast.
a) milk b) tea c) coffee d) water

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I trash from the garden.
a) help b) collect c) play d) plant
2. are marks left by feet.
a) Footprints b) Foxes c) Fingerprints d) Senses

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

Dugong - houses - endangered - Leopard - Middle

Many animals are in danger of disappearing forever. The Arabian

- 1) is one of the most 2) animals in Egypt and the
3) East. One reason is that these animals are in danger
because people build 4) in their habitats.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Zoo animals, like elephants and lions, need space, food, and vet's check. Wild animals face challenges, like their homes getting smaller. **They** also need clean water and safe places to live in. Pets, like dogs and rabbits, need daily care, exercise, and fresh food. Birds need clean cages, and all pets need vet's visits. We can help by being kind and caring for animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Animals need our help to stay and safe.
a) sad b) hungry c) healthy d) angry
2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to
a) zoo animals b) habitats c) wild animals d) pets

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do pets need?
4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. I (**eats**) breakfast every morning.
2. The cat is (**small**) than the dog.
3. They (**not play**) football after school.
4. Does he (**walks**) to work every day?

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- do you brush your teeth

7 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Healthy habits

Guiding elements:

(brush – exercise – food)

Unit 4

Egypt My Homeland

مصر وطني



Learning Outcomes

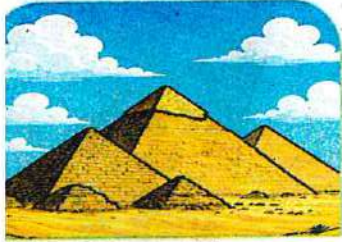
Speaking	Discuss in groups famous places in Egypt Use prepositions of places to talk about different locations	ناقش في مجموعات الأماكن المشهورة في مصر. استخدم حروف الجر للمكان عند الحديث عن المواقع المختلفة
Reading	Recognize descriptions of famous places Extract key information from travel leaflets Read numbers up to a billion	تعرف على أوصاف الأماكن المشهورة استخرج المعلومات الأساسية من النشرات السياحية اقرأ الأعداد حتى المليار
Listening	Identify key information about a tourist attraction in a conversation Discriminate between the pronunciation of the /p/ and /b/ sounds	حدد المعلومات المهمة عن أحد المعالم السياحية من خلال المحادثة. ميز بين نطق صوتي /p/ و /b/
Writing	Design a basic travel leaflet Complete sentences using prepositions of place Write a blog post about a famous place in Egypt Use prepositions of place to complete sentences	صمم نشرة سياحية بسيطة أكمل الجمل باستخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان اكتب منشورًا على مدونة عن مكان مشهور في مصر استخدم حروف الجر للمكان لإتمام الجمل

Lesson (1)

Places in Egypt

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



Pyramids

الأهرامات



Nile River

نهر النيل



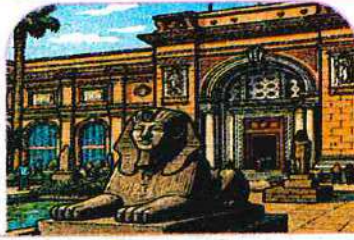
Cairo Tower

برج القاهرة



Siwa Oasis

واحة سيوة



Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري



Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar

سوق خان الخليلي

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

aces	أماكن	treasure	كنز	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
story	تاريخ	nice	لطيف	tourists	سياح
n	ممتع / متعة	gifts	هدايا	top	قمة
ones	حجارة / أحجار	busy	مزدحم	market	سوق

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
explore	يستكشف	explored	ياخذ
take	يأخذ	took	يركب
visit	يزور	visited	rode
ride	يركب	bought	يشترى
buy	يشترى		

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Welcome to...!	مرحبًا بكم في...!	Nice to meet you!	سعدت بلقاؤك!
Take pictures	يلتقط صورًا	Ride a camel	يركب جملًا
That sounds fun!	هذا يبدو ممتعًا!	buy gifts	يشترى هدايا

"Exploring Egypt with Ali!"

Listen and read.

ستمع واقرأ.

Ali and John are at the Pyramids talking about Egypt's amazing places.

يتحدث علي وجون عند الأهرامات عن الأماكن الرائعة في مصر.

Ali Hi, I'm Ali! I work as a **tour guide** in Egypt.

Welcome to Egypt!

مرحباً، أنا علي! أعمل كمرشد سياحي في مصر. أهلاً بك في مصر!

John Nice to meet you, Ali! I'm John. This is my first time in Egypt.

سعدت بلقائك، يا علي! أنا جون هذه زيارتي الأولى لمصر.

Ali You will like it here! The **Pyramids** are very nice. **Tourists** take many **pictures** here.

ستحب المكان هنا! الأهرامات رائعة جداً. يلتقط السياح الكثير من الصور هنا.

John Great! Can I **ride a camel**, too?

رائع! هل يمكنني ركوب الجمل أيضاً؟

Ali Yes! Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun!

نعم! كثير من الناس يركبون الجمال قرب الأهرامات. إنه أمر ممتع!

John What can we visit after the Pyramids?

ماذا يمكننا أن نزرع بعد الأهرامات؟

Ali Next, we can visit the **Egyptian Museum**. It has many treasures to see, and history too!

يمكننا زيارة المتحف المصري. فيه الكثير من الكنوز التي يمكنك رؤيتها، بالإضافة إلى التاريخ!

John I love history! Are there more places to visit?

أحب التاريخ! هل هناك المزيد من الأماكن للزيارة؟

Ali Yes! We can go to **Khan Al-Khalili** to buy some **gifts**.

نعم! يمكننا الذهاب إلى خان الخليلي لشراء بعض الهدايا.

John That sounds fun!

يبدو ذلك ممتعاً!

Listen again and answer.

استمع مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

1. Who is Ali?
2. What do tourists do at the Pyramids?
3. What will Ali and John visit after the Pyramids?

Activities On Lesson 1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ali is a

- a) tour guide b) doctor c) tourist d) visitor

2. John is visiting Egypt for the time.

- a) second b) first c) third d) fourth

3. Tourists like to pictures there.

- a) go b) have c) take d) play

4. John can a camel.

- a) ride b) wash c) buy d) sell

Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Siwa has lots of trees and water.

- a) Oasis b) Nile c) Museum d) Dead

2. The River is a very long river in Egypt.

- a) Red b) Nile c) Museum d) Dead

3. The Cairo is very tall. We can see Cairo from the top.

- a) River b) Sea c) Tower d) Bazaar

4. We went to the Khan Al-Khalili to buy gifts.

- a) Shop b) Bank c) Bazaar d) Library

5. People used giant stones to build the

- a) River b) Pyramids c) Oasis d) Nile

6. Khan Al-Khalili is a busy

- a) market b) hospital c) museum d) bank

7. We get water from the

- a) desert b) Nile River c) tower d) pyramids

8. At the Pyramids, tourists can camels.

- a) take b) play c) ride d) do

Unit (4)

3

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

قرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

gifts - Tourists - sail - Museum - ride

Ali is a tour guide in Egypt. He tells John about the Pyramids says

- 1) love taking pictures there. John can 2) a camel.
After the Pyramids, they can visit the Grand Egyptian 3) and
then go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy 4)

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

قرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ali is a tour guide in Egypt. He welcomes John, who is visiting Egypt for the first time. Ali tells him about the Pyramids, saying that tourists love to take pictures there. John can ride a camel. Many people ride camel near the Pyramids. After visiting the Pyramids, Ali suggests going to the Egyptian Museum to see treasures and history. They can also visit Khan Al-Khalili to buy gifts.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The underlined pronoun "him" refers to
a) Ali b) John c) Egypt d) tourists
- The Egyptian Museum is full of
a) books b) pictures c) treasures d) gifts

B) Answer the following questions.

- Who is Ali?
- Where can people buy gifts?

5

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Visiting the Pyramids

Guiding elements:

(nice - pictures - camels - fun)

Lesson (2)

My City

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



library

مكتبة



school

مدرسة



shopping mall

مركز تسوق



post office

مكتب بريد



hospital

مستشفى



museum

متحف

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

stores	محلات - متاجر	living room	غرفة المعيشة	students	طلاب
important	مهم	conversation	محادثة	letters	خطابات - رسائل
nurse	ممرضة	great	رائع / عظيم	town	مدينة "صغيرة"
packages	طرود	wall	حائط	city	مدينة "كبيرة"
notebook	كراسة	restaurant	مطعم	lamp	أباجورة / مصباح

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
borrow	borrowed	send	sent
enjoy	enjoyed	make	made
read	read	sell	sold

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير و حروف جر هامة

meet friends	يقابل الأصدقاء	borrow books	يستعير الكتب
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	stay connected	يبقى متصلاً

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

"The Places We Go in Our City" الأماكن التي نذهب إليها في مدينتنا

Our **city** has many important places that help people every day.

تضم مدينتنا العديد من الأماكن المهمة التي تساعد الناس كل يوم.

One important place is the **school**. **Students** go there to learn and meet friends. **Teachers** help them, and the **library** has many **books** to read or **borrow**.

أحد هذه الأماكن هو المدرسة، حيث يذهب الطلاب ليتعلموا ويلتقوا بأصدقائهم. يساعدهم المعلمون، وتحتوي المكتبة على الكثير من الكتب للقراءة أو الاستعارة.

Another important place is the **hospital**.

Doctors and **nurses** help sick people feel better.

Next to the hospital is the **post office**, where people send **letters** and **packages** to stay **connected**.

ومكان مهم آخر هو المستشفى، حيث يساعد الأطباء والمرضى على الشعور بالتحسن. بجوار المستشفى يوجد مكتب البريد، حيث يرسل الناس الرسائل والطرود للبقاء على تواصل.

The **shopping mall** has many **stores** and **restaurants**. People buy things and eat there. Behind it is a museum with treasures that teach us about our **history**.

يحتوي مركز التسوق على العديد من المتاجر والمطاعم، حيث يشتري الناس احتياجاتهم ويتناولون الطعام. وخلفه يوجد متحف يضم كنوزاً تعلمنا عن تاريخنا.

These places make our city a great place to live.

تجعل هذه الأماكن من مدينتنا مكاناً رائعاً للعيش.

استمع مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

Listen again and answer.

1. Why is the school important?

2. How do hospitals make people feel better?

3. Where can we go to borrow a book?

Lesson (2)

Language in use

Prepositions of Place

حروف الجر للمكان

Prepositions of place show **where** things are:

تُبيِّن حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان مكان الأشياء.

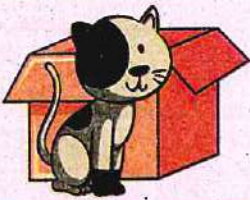
in	في	behind	خلف
on	على	next to	بجانب / بجوار
in front of	أمام	between	بين "اثنين"



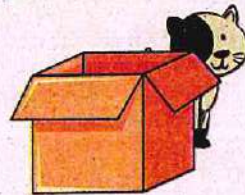
The cat is **in** the box.



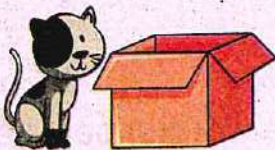
The cat is **on** the box.



The cat is **in front of** the box.



The cat is **behind** the box.



The cat is **next to** the box.



The cat is **between** the boxes.



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The dog is in of the man.
a) behind b) front c) next d) on
2. The car is the tree.
a) in b) on c) next to d) between
3. The boy is the door.
a) behind b) on c) front d) next
4. Put the book the table.
a) in b) on c) between d) next
5. The ball is the book and the box.
a) between b) in c) front d) next
6. I live in a village to the Nile.
a) next b) between c) behind d) in front
7. The dog is next the car.
a) at b) on c) in d) to
8. There is a plant the sofa.
a) next b) behind c) between d) in front
9. The table is the living room.
a) between b) in c) front d) next
10. The shoes are to the bed.
a) in b) on c) next d) behind

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

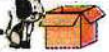
1. The school is (in) to the hospital.
2. The post office is in front (on) the bank.

Lesson (2)

3. The ball is (in) the chair.
4. The restaurant is (on) the café and the library.
5. There are plants (next) the garden.
6. The library is (front) to the museum.
7. The cat is (in front of) the box. I can't see it.
8. Ahmed is sitting (in) to me in the class.
9. I can sit (in) the chair.
10. There is a tree (next) of my house.

3 Read and write the correct preposition.

اقرأ واكتب حرف الجر الصحيح.

1. The cat is the box. 
2. The cat is the box. 
3. The cat is the box. 
4. I couldn't see the cat because it was the boxes. 

4 Look and complete the text with the correct preposition.

انظر واكمل النص بحرف الجر الصحيح.

This is my living room! My family picture is the wall. My cat is the blue chair. My toy car is the table. The lamp is the TV. The table is the TV. The plant is a book and a notebook.



Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Students go to to learn.
a) library b) school c) museum d) hospital
- help them at school.
a) Teachers b) Doctors c) Guides d) Farmers
- The has many books.
a) school b) hospital c) library d) city
- We can read or books from the library.
a) borrow b) lend c) meet d) go

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Students go to to learn.
a) bank b) school c) hospital d) stores
- The museum has a lot of
a) books b) stores c) treasures d) players
- Doctors and nurses help people feel better.
a) old b) sick c) strong d) happy
- People send at the post office.
a) stores b) planes c) letters d) cars
- People stay by sending letters and packages.
a) connected b) away c) connecting d) healthy

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

post office - shopping mall - borrow - sick - school

There are different places in my town. Young children go to 1) every morning to learn. They can 2) books from the library. When people feel 3) , they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the 4) where many shops sell different things.

Lesson (2)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

People enjoy visiting the shopping mall in the city because it has many stores and restaurants. They can buy what they need and enjoy meals with family or friends. Behind the mall, there is a nice museum with old treasures that teach people about their country's history. Visiting the museum is fun and educational (تعليمي). It helps us understand our past and be proud of our history. These places make the city a great place to live.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. People enjoy the shopping mall.
a) fighting b) sleeping c) visiting d) reading
2. The museum is the mall.
a) next to b) behind c) on d) in front of

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do people like to visit the shopping mall?
4. How does the museum help us?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. The cat is (on) the table and the chair.
2. The picture is (next) the wall.
3. Dad is (on) the living room.
4. There is a car (behind) of our house.

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Places in your city

Guiding elements:

(school - library - shopping mall)

Lesson (3) The World of Big Numbers

Vocabulary

الكلمات

China	دولة الصين	reach (reached)	يصل - يبلغ
population	عدد السكان	mean	يعني
largest	الأكبر	world	العالم

Numbers up to a billion

الأعداد حتى المليار

one	= 1
ten	= 10
a hundred	= 100
a thousand	= 1,000
a million	= 1,000,000
a hundred million	= 100,000,000
a billion	= 1,000,000,000

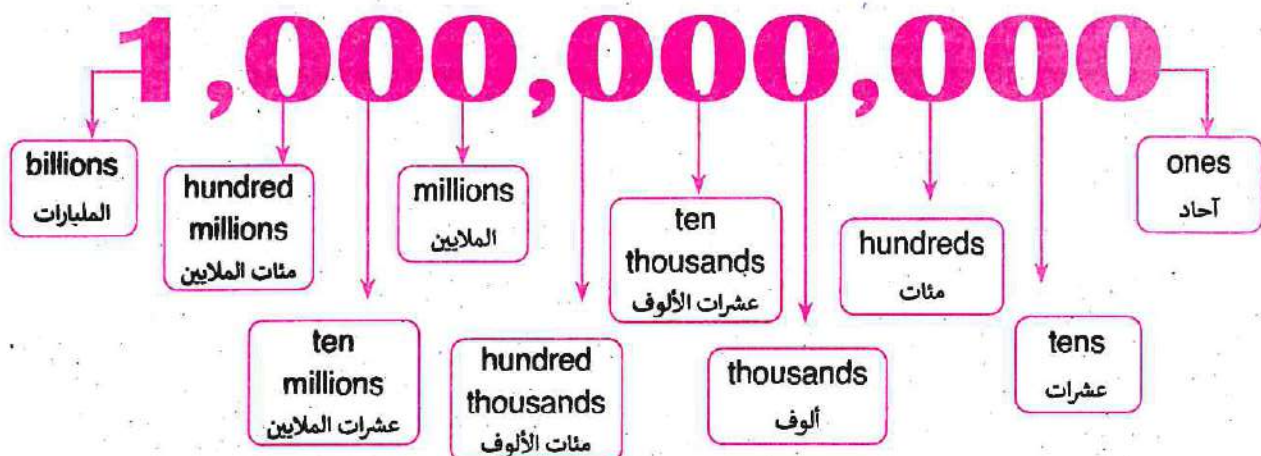
Learn

A billion is a thousand million.

المليار هو ألف مليون (1,000,000,000)

Read and learn the place value of each number.

اقرأ وتعلم القيمة المكانية لكل رقم.



Lesson (3)

Look and read.

انظر، واقرأ.

China has one of the world's largest populations.

In 1980, the population of China reached about 1,000,000,000, which means 1 billion people.

تعد الصين من أكثر الدول سكاناً في العالم. في عام 1980، بلغ عدد سكان الصين حوالي 1,000,000,000 أي مليار شخص.



How to read large numbers.

كيف تقرأ الأعداد الكبيرة.

If we need to say the number 8,199,590,341, we say "Eight billion, one hundred ninety-nine million, five hundred ninety thousand, three hundred and forty-one".

إذا أردنا قراءة الرقم 8,199,590,341، نقول: "ثمانية مليارات، ومائة وتسعة وتسعون مليوناً، وخمسمائة وتسعون ألفاً، وثلاثمائة وواحد وأربعون".

Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

4,000

73,000,000

7,000,000,000

300,000

a. three hundred thousand

b. four thousand

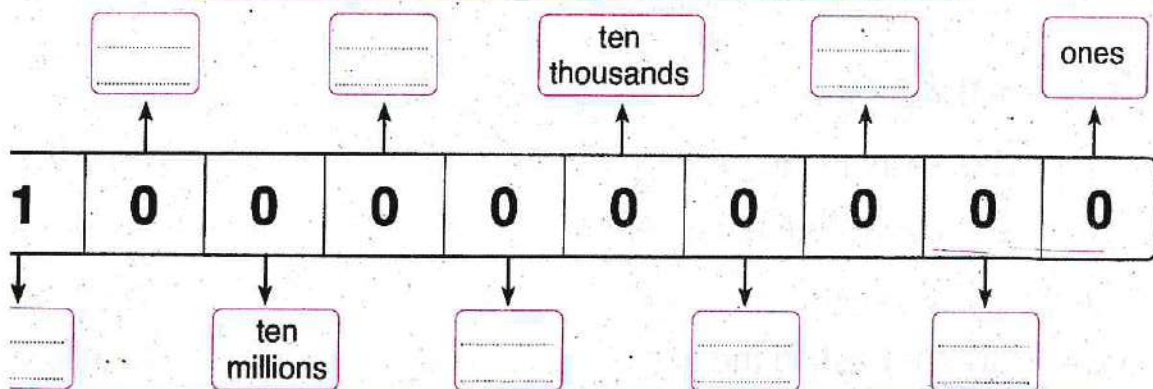
c. seventy-three million

d. seven billion

Read and complete

اقرأ وأكمل.

millions - hundreds - hundred millions - tens -
hundred thousands - billions - thousands





Pronunciation

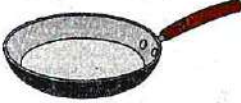
/p/ and /b/ sounds

The letter "p" is voiceless. To say it, press your lips together and blow out air.
The letter "b" is voiced. To say it, press your lips together and use your voice.

الحرف "p" مهموس، لكي تنطقه، اضغط شفثيك معًا ثم انفخ الهواء. الحرف "b" مجهور. لتنطقه، اضغط شفثيك معًا واستخدم صوتك.

استمع وقل.

Listen and say.

			
pear كمثرى	bear دُب	peak قمة	beak منقار طائر
			
pan طاسة	ban منع وحظر	pond بركة "ماء"	bond رابطة
			
pin دبوس	bin صندوق قمامة	pat يربت "على قطة"	bat خفاش

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.

1. The ducks swim in the pond.

يسبح البط في البركة.

2. Mom cooks eggs in the pan.

تطهو أمي البيض في المقلاة "الطاسة".

3. The bat flies at night.

يطير الخفاش ليلاً.

4. We throw our trash in the bin.

نرمي القمامة في سلة القمامة.

Activities On Lesson 3

1 Look, read and write the missing sound.

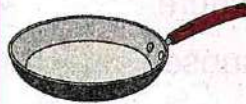
انظر، واقرأ، واكتب الصوت الناقص.



_ear



_eak



_an



_ond



_at



_in



_ond



_at

2 Read and circle the odd sound out.

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الصوت المختلف.

- | | | | | | | |
|---------|---|------|---|------|---|------|
| 1. pear | - | pond | - | pat | - | ban |
| 2. bond | - | pan | - | bat | - | beak |
| 3. pat | - | pear | - | bond | - | peak |
| 4. ban | - | pin | - | bat | - | bin |

3 Read and sort the words.

اقرأ وصنف الكلمات.

pin - pat - bear - ban - pan - beak

/b/

.....

.....

.....

/p/

.....

.....

.....

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing: A Blog

Think and create: A Leaflet

Vocabulary

الكلمات

adventure	مغامرة	colorful	زاهي الألوان	St. Catherine Mountain	جبل سانت كاترين
popular	مشهور	nature	طبيعة	old monastery	الدير القديم
blog post	مدونة	sunset	غروب الشمس	South Sinai	جنوب سيناء
leaflet	منشور	rocks	صخور	warm clothes	ملابس دافئة

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

along the way	على طول الطريق	at the top	في القمة
learn about	يتعلم عن	historical places	أماكن تاريخية

Read Tarek's blog post.

"A visit to St. Catherine Mountain" زيارة إلى جبل سانت كاترين

By Tarek

March 15, 2024

Many tourists visit **St. Catherine Mountain** in **South Sinai, Egypt**. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold:



Along the way, they see **colorful rocks** and small **plants**, and some **take pictures**.

At the top, they visit the **old monastery** and learn about its history.

St. Catherine is a popular place for **nature**, **adventure**, and **fun** with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

بقلم طارق

15 مارس 2024

يزور العديد من السياح جبل سانت كاترين في جنوب سيناء، مصر. يستيقظون مبكراً لتسلق الجبل، ويرتدون ملابس دافئة لأن الجو بارد هناك.

على طول الطريق، يرون صخوراً ملونة ونباتات صغيرة، ويقوم بعضهم بالتقاط الصور.

في القمة، يزورون الدير القديم ويتعرفون على تاريخه.

سانت كاترين وجهة شهيرة لمحبي الطبيعة والمغامرة، ولمن يرغبون في قضاء وقت ممتع مع الأصدقاء والعائلة. يمكن للناس أن

يتعلموا عن التاريخ ويستمتعوا بالعالم الطبيعي.

Lessons (4 & 5)



Writing skills

A blog مدونة

Writing a good blog:

A good blog has:

- A clear title
- A writer's name
- A date
- Pictures / Drawings
- Interesting details
- Descriptive words

كتابة مدونة جيدة:

تحتوي المدونة الجيدة على:

عنوان واضح

اسم الكاتب

تاريخ

صور / رسومات

تفاصيل شيقة

كلمات وصفية

Remember

1. The **title** tells readers what the blog post is about.

العنوان يُخبر القارئ عن موضوع التدوينة.

2. The **writer's name** shows who wrote the blog post.

اسم الكاتب يُوضح من الذي كتب التدوينة.

3. The **date** shows when the blog post was written.

التاريخ يُبين متى كتبت التدوينة.

4. **Descriptive words** help readers imagine and picture what you're writing about, like "**interesting**" and "**popular**".

الكلمات الوصفية تساعد القارئ على التخيل وتصوير ما تكتبه، مثل "ممتع" و"مشهور".

5. **Good descriptive** writing uses **senses** words.

الكتابة الوصفية الجيدة تستخدم كلمات الحواس.

If you write about how the place **looks**, **sounds**, **smells**, and **feels** like, the reader will be able to imagine it.

إذا كتبت عن شكل المكان، والأصوات، والروائح، والإحساس فيه، سيتمكن القارئ من تخيله.

If you talk about the beach, you can say: "The air **tastes** salty."

إذا تحدثت عن الشاطئ، يمكنك أن تقول: "الهواء طعمه مالح."

- To write a blog post about a place in Egypt, you can answer these questions. لكتابة تدوينة عن مكان في مصر، يمكنك الإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة.

- Where is the place?
- Why is it popular?
- What can people see there?
- What do visitors wear?
- What do visitors like about it?
- What do visitors do there?

A model blog post.

نموذج مدونة.

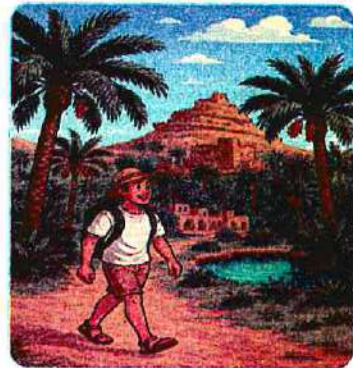
Siwa Oasis

Name: Roshdy

Date: October, 31, 2025

Write and describe the place you chose.

Siwa Oasis is a small town in the desert in Egypt. It has many trees and springs. Visitors wear light clothes because it's hot.



What else?

Siwa is popular because it is beautiful. It has old buildings. People like Siwa because they enjoy the fresh air and friendly people.

Why should people visit this place?

People can see salt lakes, swim in springs, take pictures and watch the sunset

Lessons (4 & 5)

A leaflet

Remember: A good leaflet has some elements.

تذكّر: المنشور الجيد يحتوي على بعض العناصر.

- 1. A **main heading** is the big title at the top. العنوان الرئيسي هو العنوان الكبير في الأعلى.
- 2. A **sub-heading** is the smaller title. العنوان الفرعي هو العنوان الأصغر.
- 3. An **image** is a photo or drawing. الصورة هي صورة فوتوغرافية أو رسمة.
- 4. A **detailed description** gives reasons to visit and advice on what to expect. الوصف التفصيلي يقدم أسبابًا للزيارة ونصائح عما يمكن توقعه.
- 5. A **call to action** is an invitation. دعوة لاتخاذ إجراء هي دعوة للمشاركة أو القيام بشيء.

Look and read the leaflet about Siwa Oasis.

انظر واقرأ النشرة عن واحة سيوة.



main heading ① Welcome to the Siwa Oasis!

sub-heading ② PLACES TO SEE

LOCAL FOOD

WHAT TO WEAR



detailed description ④

Salt Lake
swim and take photos

Desert
see sunset

Sweet dates
fresh from palm trees

Good olive oil
excellent price

Daytime
summer clothes

Night time
bring a jacket

call to action ⑤ Book now: ☎ +2010XXXXXXX ✉ siwa@trip.com

Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

ستمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Many tourists visit St. Catherine
a) Mountain b) Sea c) Hell d) Canal
- It is in South
a) Cairo b) Sinai c) Giza d) London
- They wake up to climb the mountain
a) late b) hard c) early d) fast
- Tourists wear warm clothes because it's there
a) cold b) hot c) nice d) windy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- There are colorful along the way
a) pictures b) rocks c) history d) food
- Tourists visit the old to learn about its history
a) nature b) Sinai c) monastery d) lake
- St. Catherine is a place for nature and adventure
a) popular b) bad c) small d) quick
- The tells readers what the blog post is about
a) date b) drawing c) title d) leaflet

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

قرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

climb - doctors - rocks - nature - monastery

Many tourists go to St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai. They wake up early to 1) and wear warm clothes. On the way, they see colorful 2) and plants and take photos. At the top, they visit the old 3) and learn about its history. It's a great place for fun, 4) and adventure.

Lessons (4 & 5)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The weather is in the morning.
a) hot b) cold c) nice d) cloudy
- There are rocks along the way.
a) colorful b) bad c) black d) white

B) Answer the following questions.

1. Where is St. Catherine Mountain located?

2. Why do people visit the old monastery?

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. welcome to Siwa Oasis

2. Why is Egypt famous

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The pyramids

Guiding elements:

(nice - Giza - history - pictures)



Review on Unit (4)

Vocabulary

Pyramids	الإهرامات	tourist	سائح	hospital	مستشفى
Nile River	نهر النيل	gift	هدية	library	مكتبة
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	borrow	يستعير	school	مدرسة
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	nature	طبيعة	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	package	طرد	post office	مكتب بريد
blog	مدونة	letters	رسائل / خطابات	stores	محلات
leaflet	منشور	history	تاريخ	restaurant	مطعم
mountain	جبل	monastery	دير	adventure	مغامرة
Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري	Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar	سوق خان الخليلي		

Pronunciation

/p/			/b/		
pear	كمثرى	pin	bear	دبوس	سلة قمامة
peak	قمة	pat	bond	يربّت "على قطة"	خفاش
pond	بركة "ماء"	pan	ban	طاسة	منقار طائر
				beak	منع وحظر

Language

Prepositions of place

حروف الجر للمكان

in	في	behind	خلف
on	على	next to	بجوار
in front of	أمام	between	بين "الثنين"

- The cat is **in** the box.
- The cat is **between** the table and the chair.



Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

The Pyramids

The pyramids are amazing places. They are in Giza. Tourists like to visit them. They take many pictures there. They can ride camels, too.

Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar

Khan Al-Khalili is a famous old market in Cairo. People visit it to buy some gifts. They can learn about its history. It's fun and interesting.

Places in our city

Our city has many important places. Students go to school to learn. We can go to the library to read or borrow books. The shopping mall has many stores where you can buy things.

St. Catherine Mountain

St. Catherine Mountain is in South Sinai, Egypt. There are colorful rocks and small plants along the way. People visit it to learn about its history and enjoy the natural world.

The Nile River

The Nile River is the longest river in the world. We get water from it to grow plants. We can see beautiful birds and fish in the Nile River.

Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

الأهرامات	مرشد سياحي
نهر النيل	سياح
برج القاهرة	سوق
واحة سيوة	أماكن
المتحف المصري	حجارة
سوق خان الخليلي	تاريخ

Lesson (2)

مكتبة	مدينة "كبيرة"
مدرسة	مدينة "صغيرة"
مركز تسوق	رائع / عظيم
مكتب بريد	محلات - متاجر
مستشفى	خطابات - رسائل
متحف	مطعم

Lesson (3)

دولة الصين	رابطة
عدد السكان	بركة ماء
يصل - يبلغ	طاسة / مقلاة
يعني	قمة الجبل
أكبر	خفافش
دب	منقار
كمثرى	مليارات
ديوس	

Lessons (4&5)

مدونة	غروب الشمس
جبل سانت كاترين	زاهية الألوان
جنوب سيناء	محبوب - مشهور
الدير القديم	طبيعة
صخور	منشور

Activities On Unit 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The is an important place in our city.
a) school b) hospital c) museum d) library
2. and nurses help people there.
a) Teachers b) Players c) Doctors d) Students
3. People go there when they get
a) sick b) old c) big d) happy
4. People send letters and packages at the
a) hospital b) museum c) post office d) mall

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Egyptian is full of history.
a) Nile b) Museum c) Tower d) Oasis
2. The ducks swim in the
a) ban b) bond c) pond d) bin

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

ride - first - Pyramids - take - make

Ali's a tour guide in Egypt. He meets John. It's his 1) time in Egypt. Ali will show him the 2) Tourists can 3) pictures here. John can 4) a camel, too. It's fun! He can visit many interesting places and enjoy his time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

In our city, there are important places that help people every day. One of the most important places is the school. Students go there to learn and meet their friends. Teachers help them with their studies, and the library is full of books that they can read or borrow. Education is important because it helps children build their future. Schools make the city better by helping students become smarter and more successful.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Students can meet their friends at the
a) school b) museum c) hospital d) bank
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to
a) places b) teachers c) students d) schools

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can students do at the library?
4. Why is education important?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. The house is (behind) the bank and the school.
2. The dog is standing (under) the door.
3. My cat is hiding (on) the armchair.
4. There is a tree (next) of my house.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- egypt is a nice country

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The hospital

Guiding elements:

(important - doctors - sick)

Al-Azhar Corner

1

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

meet - name - Do - first

- Ali : Hello. What's your name?
 John : Hello. My 1)..... is John.
 Ali : Nice to 2)..... you, John.
 John : This is my 3)..... time in Egypt.
 Ali : 4)..... you like it here?
 John : Yes, I do.

2

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

borrow - library - Yes - do

- Sara : What important places are there in your town?
 Mona : There is the 1).....
 Sara : What 2)..... you do there?
 Mona : I read or 3)..... books.
 Sara : Do you like reading?
 Mona : 4)....., I do.

3

Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. visit - Pyramids - I - to - like - the - .

 2. ride - Tourists - camels - can - .

 3. you - go - Where - to buy - do - gifts - ?

 4. behind - The cat - the box - is - .

 5. swim - in - The - pond - ducks - the - .

Unit 5

A Day at Work

يوم في العمل



Learning Outcomes

Speaking

Discuss significance of different jobs/uniforms

ناقش أهمية الوظائف المختلفة والزي الرسمي المرتبط بها

Use superlative adjectives in sentences

استخدم صفات صيغة التفضيل في الجمل

Answer comprehension questions about different jobs according to the information in a reading text

Reading

أجب عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بالوظائف المختلفة وفقاً للمعلومات الواردة في النص المقروء

Identify main ideas in a story setting

حدّد الفكرة الرئيسة في مكان وزمان القصة

Identify the roles of different jobs in a conversation

حدّد أدوار الوظائف المختلفة في الحوار

Listening

Produce long vowel sounds with silent 'e'

انطق أصوات الحروف المتحركة المحدودة التي تحتوي على الحرف الصامت «e»

Write non-fiction texts to reflect the components of a paragraph about jobs

Writing

اكتب نصوصاً غير خيالية تُعبّر عن مكونات الفقرة المتعلقة بالوظائف

Provide a different ending to a story

قدم نهاية مختلفة للقصة

Lesson (1) Different Jobs

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



doctor

طبيب



nurse

ممرضة



teacher

معلمة



engineer

مهندس



firefighter

رجل الإطفاء



police officer

ضابط شرطة

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

jobs	وظائف	different	مختلف	coat	معطف - بالطو
uniform	زي موحد	helmet	خوذة	vest	سترة / صديري
cap	كاب «قبعة»	costumes	أزياء - ملابس	buildings	مباني
patients	مرضى	important	مهم	sick	مريض

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
talk	يتكلم talked	care for	يعتني بـ cared for
help	يساعد helped	stop	يوقف - يمنع stopped
check	يفحص checked	save	ينقذ saved
design	يُصمم designed	protect	يحمي protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
wear يرتدي / يلبس	wore	grow up ينمو - يكبر	grew up
do / does يفعل / يعمل	did	let يدع / يترك	let

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

help sick people	يساعد المرضى	design new buildings	يصمم مباني جديدة
care for the patients	يعتني بالمرضى	stop fires	يخمد الحرائق

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.



A **doctor** helps sick people and checks their health. He wears a white coat.

يساعد الطبيب المرضى ويفحص حالتهم الصحية. وهو يرتدي معطفاً أبيضاً.



A **nurse** helps the doctors and patients. She wears a blue uniform and a cap.

تُساعد الممرضة الأطباء والمرضى. وهي ترتدي زياً أزرقاً وكاباً «قبة».



A **police officer** protects the people. He wears a white uniform and a cap.

يحمي ضابط الشرطة الناس. وهو يرتدي زياً أبيضاً وكاب.



An **engineer** designs new buildings. He wears a yellow helmet and a vest.

يصمم المهندس مباني جديدة. وهو يرتدي خوذة صفراء وسترة.



A **firefighter** saves people from fires. He wears a blue uniform and a red helmet.

ينقذ رجل الإطفاء الناس من الحرائق. وهو يرتدي زياً أزرقاً وخوذة حمراء.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

عندما أكبر "When I grow up..."

Ms. Hala is talking to her students about what they want to be when they grow up.

تتحدث الأستاذة هالة مع طلابها عن ما يرغبون أن يكونوا عليه عندما يكبرون.

Ms. Hala Good morning, dear students! Let's talk about your costumes.

صباح الخير، يا أعزائي الطلاب! هيا نتحدث عن أزيائكم.

Sara I'm a **doctor**. I wear a white coat.

أنا طبيبة. أرتدي معطفًا أبيضًا.

Ms. Hala What do you do at your job?

ماذا تفعلين في عملك؟

Sara I **help sick people** and check their health.

أساعد المرضى وأفحص صحتهم.

Ali I'm an **engineer**. I wear a yellow helmet.

أنا مهندس. أرتدي خوذة صفراء.

Ms. Hala What do you do at your job?

ماذا تفعل في عملك؟

Ali I **design** new buildings.

أصمم مباني جديدة.

Talia I'm a **nurse**. I wear a blue uniform.

أنا ممرضة. أرتدي زيًا أزرقًا.

Ms. Hala What do you do at your job?

ماذا تفعلين في عملك؟

Talia I **help the doctors** and **care for the patients**.

أساعد الأطباء وأعتني بالمرضى.

Omar I'm a **firefighter**. I wear a red uniform.

أنا رجل إطفاء. أرتدي زيًا أحمرًا.

Ms. Hala What do you do at your job?

ماذا تفعل في عملك؟

Omar I **stop fires** and **save people**.

أطفئ الحرائق وأنقذ الناس.

Ms. Hala All your jobs are really important. Well done!

جميع وظائفكم مهمة جدًا. أحسنتم!



- Listen again and answer.

استمع مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

What are Ms. Hala and the students talking about?

What does a nurse do?

What does an engineer wear?

Activities On Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Sara is a/an
a) engineer b) doctor c) teacher d) nurse
- She wears a coat.
a) black b) green c) white d) red
- She helps people.
a) sick b) strong c) weak d) bad
- She checks their
a) wealth b) money c) engine d) health

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- A/An wears a white coat.
a) teacher b) firefighter c) doctor d) engineer
- A/An wears a white uniform and a cap.
a) nurse b) teacher c) police officer d) engineer
- A/An wears a yellow helmet and a vest.
a) doctor b) nurse c) engineer d) firefighter
- A/An wears a blue uniform and a red helmet.
a) driver b) diver c) firefighter d) teacher
- A/An wears a blue uniform and a cap
a) engineer b) nurse c) firefighter d) teacher
- A doctor helps people.
a) smart b) clever c) strong d) sick
- An engineer wears a yellow
a) cap b) hat c) helmet d) shorts
- A firefighter stops
a) insects b) fires c) birds d) planes
- A doctor people's health.
a) checks b) breaks c) mends d) drinks

Lesson (1)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

sick - helmet - engineer - nurse - white

Ms. Hala asks her students about their costumes. Sara is a doctor and wears a 1) coat. She helps 2) people. Ali is an engineer with a yellow 3) He designs buildings. Talia is 4) in a blue uniform.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ms. Hala greets her students and asks about their costumes. Sara says she is a doctor and wears a white coat. She helps sick people and checks their health. Ali says he is an engineer and wears a yellow helmet. He designs new buildings. Talia is a nurse in a blue uniform. She helps doctors and cares for patients. Omar is a firefighter with a blue uniform. He stops fires and saves people. Ms. Hala praises them all.

1) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ms. Hala asks about the students'

- a) jobs b) costumes c) names d) classes

2. Omar stops and saves people.

- a) thieves b) cars c) fires d) rivers

2) Answer the following questions.

What does Sara wear?

What does Talia do?

5 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your favorite job

Guiding elements:

What is the job? - What do you wear? - What do you do?

.....

.....

.....

Lesson (2) Jobs I Love!

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

mentor	مُعلم / مُرشد	puppet	عروسة مُتحركة
wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية	voice-over actor	مُمثل أصوات

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

shy	خجول	character	شخصية
nature	الطبيعة	wise	حكيم
funny	مُضحك	smart	ذكي / ماهر
brave	شجاع	wild animals	حيوانات برية

Opposites

الكلمة وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite	عكسها
high	عالي / مرتفع	low	منخفض
fast	سريع	slow	بطيء
loud voice	صوت الكبار	little voice	صوت الصغار
large	كبير «الحجم»	small	صغير «الحجم»
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
wait	ينتظر waited	know	يعرف knew
guess	يخمن guessed	become	يصبح became
enjoy	يستمتع enjoyed	find	يجد found
need	يحتاج needed	tell	يخبر - يحكي told

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة	take great photos	يلتقط صورًا رائعة
make voices	يصدر أصوات	do shows for children	يقدم عروض للأطفال
in faraway places	في أماكن بعيدة		

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

أربع وظائف مذهلة "Four Amazing Jobs"

Noha is a **mentor**. She does very kind and helpful work! She helps young students learn and grow. "I help shy students become brave," she says. "When they get good marks, it feels so nice. It makes me happy when they do well!"

نهى مُرشدة تربوية. تقوم بعمل لطيف ومفيد جدًا. تساعد الطلاب الصغار على التعلّم والنمو. تقول: «أساعد الطلاب الخجولين على أن يصبحوا شجعانًا.» وتضيف: «عندما يحصلون على درجات جيدة، أشعر بسعادة كبيرة. يسعدني عندما يؤدون أعمالهم بشكل جيد!»



Amr is a **wildlife photographer**. He has an interesting job! He takes pictures of wild animals. "I find the biggest lions and the smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in faraway places. Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture!"

عمرو مصوّر للحياة البرية. لديه وظيفة شيقّة! يلتقط صورًا للحيوانات البرية. يقول: «أعثر على أكبر الأسود وأصغر الطيور.» و: «ألتقط صورًا رائعة في أماكن بعيدة. أحيانًا، أنتظر وقتًا طويلًا للحصول على أفضل صورة!»



Salma works with **puppets**. She has a great job! She uses puppets to tell stories. "I do many shows for children," she says. "I love seeing their big smiles and hearing their loud laughs. It's fun when children enjoy the show!"

سلمى تعمل مع الدمى. لديها وظيفة رائعة! تستخدم الدمى لسرد القصص. تقول: «أقدم عروضًا كثيرة للأطفال.» وتضيف: «أحب رؤية ابتساماتهم العريضة وسماع ضحكاتهم العالية. من الممتع أن يستمتع الأطفال بالعرض!»



Adel is a **voice-over actor**. He has an exciting job! He makes voices for cartoons. "I can make high voices and low voices," he says. "I talk very fast or very slow. I make little voices for small characters and loud voices for large ones!"

عادل ممثل أصوات. لديه وظيفة مثيرة! يُؤدّي الأصوات في أفلام الرسوم المتحركة. يقول: «أستطيع أن أصدر أصواتًا عالية وأخرى منخفضة.» ويضيف: «أتحدث بسرعة كبيرة أو ببطء شديد. أصدر أصواتًا منخفضة للشخصيات الصغيرة وأصواتًا عالية للشخصيات الكبيرة!»



Language in use

Superlative Adjectives

صفات التفضيل

We use **superlative adjectives** to show the greatest degree of something.

نستخدم صفات التفضيل لبيان أعلى درجة لشيء ما.

Form التكوين

the + adj. (صفة) + est

- tall → the tallest

- clean → the cleanest

e.g. This tree is the tallest tree in the park.

Spelling rules قواعد الهجاء

1) If an adjective ends in a vowel and a consonant, double the consonant before adding **-est** to the end:

(١) إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك ثم حرف ساكن، ضاعف الحرف الساكن قبل إضافة «-est» في النهاية:

- big → the biggest

- hot → the hottest

e.g. I find the biggest lions.

2) When an adjective ends in **-e**, we add **-st** to the end:

(٢) عندما تنتهي الصفة بالحرف «-e»، نضيف «-st» في النهاية:

- nice → the nicest

- fine → the finest

e.g. Mona is the nicest friend I have.

3) If an adjective ends in a consonant and **-y**, we change **-y** to **-i** and add **-est** to the end:

(٣) إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن متبوعاً بـ «-y»، نغير «-y» إلى «-i» ثم نضيف «-est» في النهاية:

- happy → the happiest

- easy → the easiest

e.g. Nora is the happiest girl in the class.



There are some irregular adjectives. يوجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة «يتغير شكلها».

good → the best

bad → the worst

Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My grandpa is the person I know.
a) wiser b) wiser than c) wisest d) wise
2. Ahmed told us the story at the party.
a) funniest b) funny c) funnier d) fun
3. August is the month of the year.
a) hot b) hotter than c) hottest d) hotter
4. Ms. Mona is the person in my school.
a) kind b) kindest c) kinder d) kinder than
5. My father takes the photos.
a) as great b) great c) greater d) greatest
6. I have the box.
a) heavy b) heavier c) heaviest d) heavier than
7. He waits a very long time to get the photo.
a) good b) bad c) better d) best
8. This tree is the tree in the park.
a) taller b) tall c) tallest d) taller than
9. I find the lions.
a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) bigger than

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. Heba is the (tall) girl in the class.
2. Safia is the (kinder) teacher in our school.
3. My uncle grows the (tall) trees.
4. The elephant is the (bigger) animal.
5. Anas is the (nice) person in my class.
6. My grandpa is (an) oldest in the family.
7. Amira is the (funny) girl.
8. February is the (shorter) month.
9. My grandma is the (wise) person I know.
10. My son is the (cleverer) student in the class.

Activities On Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Adel is a voice-over
a) singer b) swimmer c) actor d) player
- He has an exciting
a) doll b) job c) watch d) game
- He makes voices for
a) carton b) birds c) cartoons d) animals
- He makes little voices for characters.
a) big b) huge c) enormous d) small

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- A helps young students learn and grow.
a) seller b) pilot c) mentor d) diver
- I help shy students become
a) brave b) big c) small d) slow
- A photographer takes pictures of wild animals.
a) clean b) clear c) wild d) wildlife
- I take great photos in places.
a) far b) far away c) faraway d) far way
- Salma makes tell stories.
a) puppets b) cars c) trains d) planes

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

photo - photographer - dangerous - animals - wild

This is my uncle, Amr. He takes pictures of wild 1) in nature. He is a very smart wildlife 2) Everyone says that Amr's job is really 3), but he finds it quite interesting. Sometimes, he waits for a very long time to get the best 4) He likes wild animals and being in nature.

Lesson (2)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Noha is a mentor. She has a very kind job! She helps young students learn and grow. "I help shy students become brave," she says. "When they get good marks, it feels so nice. It makes me happy when they do well!" Amr is a wildlife photographer. He has an interesting job! He takes pictures of wild animals. "I find the biggest lions and the smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in faraway places. Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture!"

1) Choose the correct answer.

- Noha is a
a) singer b) dancer c) mentor d) player
- She helps students become brave.
a) shy b) strong c) clean d) tall

3) Answer the following questions.

- How does Noha feel when students do well?
- What does Amr do?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

5 اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- My grandfather is the (old) person in my family.
- Talia is (than) tallest girl in class.
- The lion is the (stronger) animal.
- He is the (wise) man in the school.

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

6 اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A wildlife photographer

Guiding elements:

(wildlife photographer - animals - photos)

Lesson (3) Story Time: The Last House

Key vocabulary

لغات أساسية

skilled carpenter	نجار ماهر	furniture	أثاث
wooden	خشبي	gift	هدية
regret	الندم	promise	وعد / يوعد

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

lifetime	حياة	request	طلب	carelessly	باهمال
crooked "adj."	معوج	board	لوح «خشب»	poor	فقير
nail	مسمار	weak	ضعيف	key	مفتاح

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
admire	يعجب بـ	repair	يصلح
decide	يقرر	hammer	يطرق - يدق «بالشاكوش»
rest	يستريح	promise	يعد
retire	يتقاعد	build	يبني
agree	يوافق	stand	يقف
admired		repaired	
decided		hammered	
rested		promised	
retired		built	
agreed		stood	

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

from far away	من مكان بعيد	a lifetime of hard work	حياة مليئة بالعمل الجاد
stood in shock	وقف مصدوماً	but his heart was not in it	لكن قلبه لم يكن مع ذلك
give / do his best	يبذل أقصى جهده	It was time to + "inf." ..	حان الوقت لكي

Definitions

تعريفات

fit	means to be the right size.	مناسب «في الحجم أو المقياس»
wooden	means made from wood.	خشبي
skilled	means very good at doing something.	ماهر
promise	means that you will or won't definitely do something.	يعد

Lesson (3)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

المنزل الأخير "The Last House"

Sami was a **skilled carpenter** who lived in a quiet village. For many years, he built **strong houses** and beautiful furniture. People admired his work, and some traveled from far away just to see his **wooden chairs and tables**.

كان سامي نجارًا ماهرًا يعيش في قرية هادئة. وعلى مدى سنوات طويلة، بنى بيوتًا قوية وأثاثًا جميلًا. كان الناس يُعجبون بعمله، وكان البعض يسافر من أماكن بعيدة فقط لرؤية كراسيه وطاولاته الخشبية.

After a lifetime of hard work, Sami grew tired. He decided it was time to rest and stop building. But before he could retire, the village king came to him with a request.

بعد عمر قضاه في العمل الشاق، شعر سامي بالتعب. قرّر أن الوقت قد حان للراحة والتوقف عن البناء. لكن، وقبل أن يتقاعد، جاء إليه ملك القرية بطلب.

"Please **build** one last house," the king said. "It will be your final **gift** to the village."

قال الملك: «أرجوك، ابن بيتًا أخيرًا. سيكون هديتك الأخيرة للقرية.»

Sami agreed, but his heart was not in it. He used **weak wood**. He didn't check the **windows** or the **doors**. The windows didn't fit. The doors were crooked. The house looked nothing like his usual careful work.

وافق سامي، لكن قلبه لم يكن في العمل. استخدم خشبًا ضعيفًا، ولم يفحص النوافذ أو الأبواب. لم تكن النوافذ مناسبة، وكانت الأبواب معوجة. لم يشبه البيت عمله المعتاد الدقيق على الإطلاق.

When the house was finished, Sami gave the **keys** to the king. The king smiled kindly and said, "This house is for you, Sami. It's a gift for all your wonderful work over the years."

عندما انتهى سامي من بناء البيت، سلّم المفاتيح للملك. ابتسم الملك بلطف وقال: «هذا البيت لك يا سامي. إنه هدية تقديرًا لكل ما قدّمته من عمل رائع على مرّ السنين.»

Sami stood in shock. His own **poor work** was now his home. His face turned red with **regret**. He had built this house **carelessly**—and now he had to live in it. وقف سامي مصدومًا. لقد أصبح عمله السيئ منزله الآن. احمرّ وجهه من شدة الندم. لقد بنى هذا البيت بلا اهتمام—والآن عليه أن يعيش فيه.

From that day on, Sami promised to always give his best, no matter how tired or busy he felt. He slowly **repaired** the house, **board** by board, and made it strong and beautiful again.

ومنذ ذلك اليوم، وعّد سامي نفسه أن يبذل أفضل ما لديه دائمًا، مهما شعر بالتعب أو الانشغال. بدأ يُصلح البيت تدريجيًا، لوحًا بعد لوح، حتى أعاده قويًا وجميلًا من جديد.

And with each **nail** he **hammered**, Sami remembered who he truly was.

ومع كل مسمار يدقّه، كان سامي يتذكّر من يكون حقًا.





Pronunciation

Long vowel sounds with silent "e"

أصوات الحروف المتحركة الممدودة

When a silent "e" comes at the end of a word after one consonant, it makes the vowel before it a long vowel. This is like "rope" and "slide".

عندما يأتي حرف «e» الصامت في نهاية الكلمة بعد حرف ساكن واحد، فإنه يجعل الحرف المتحرك الذي قبله ممدوداً.

مثل «rope» و «slide».

Look, listen and say.

انظر، استمع وقل.

face

وجه



gate

بوابة



nine

تسعة



slide

زحليقة



stone

حجر



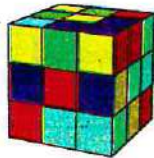
rope

حبل



cube

مكعب



flute

ناي



Listen and say

استمع وقل.

1. I play on the slide in the park.
2. My house has a very big gate.
3. My sister can play the flute.

أنا أعب على الزحليقة في الحديقة.
منزلي به بوابة كبيرة جداً.
أختي تستطيع أن تعزف على الناي.

Activities On Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- After a lifetime of work, Samy grew tired.
a) easy b) hard c) weak d) strong
- He decided to stop
a) singing b) swimming c) building d) running
- The village came to him with a request.
a) prince b) queen c) princess d) king
- The house will be your final to the village.
a) gift b) hope c) money d) coins

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- "....." means to be the right size.
a) Wooden b) Metal c) Fit d) Skilled
- He agreed to build the house but his wasn't in it.
a) nose b) heart c) hand d) leg
- Sami was a carpenter. He built strong houses.
a) skilled b) ordinary c) bad d) ugly
- "....." means made from wood.
a) Wooden b) Promise c) Fit d) Skilled
- Study hard and do your
a) fist b) best c) feast d) pest
- His face turned with regret.
a) pink b) green c) red d) orange
- To be very good at doing something means ".....".
a) fit b) wooden c) metal d) skilled
- Sami was because his own poor work was now his home.
a) shocked b) happy c) glad d) delighted

3

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

gift - wood - carpenter - poorly - work

Sami was a skilled 1) who lived in a quiet village. After many years of hard 2), he felt tired and wanted to stop. But the king asked him to build one last house as a 3) to the village. Sami used weak 4) and didn't check the windows or the doors.

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. For many years, he built strong houses and beautiful furniture. People admired his work, and some traveled from far away just to see his wooden chairs and tables.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Sami was a skilled
a) fisherman b) carpenter c) doctor d) player
- Sami lived in a quiet
a) village b) city c) town d) street

B) Answer the following questions.

- What did Sami build?
- What did people do to see Sami's work?

5

Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- my house has a very big gate
- why did Samy stop working

6

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding elements:

A carpenter

(houses - furniture - wood)

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing: Non-Fiction

Think and create: Origami Art

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

fire station	محطة إطفاء	tools	عدة (أدوات)
protective uniform	زِي واقِي	water hose	خرطوم ماء
equipment	معدات	ladder	سلم
hero	بطل	right place	المكان الصحيح
fire truck	عربة مطافئ	oxygen tank	أسطوانة أكسجين
harm	جرس	dangerous	خطير

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

neighbor	جار	community	مجتمع
local	محلي	proud	فخور
sick	سَمِيك	source	مصدر
heavy	ثَقِيل	check	يفحص
reliable	خطوط	reliable	يمكن الاعتماد عليه

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the right place	في المكان الصحيح	make sure	يتأكد
danger	في خطر	make a difference	يحدث فرقاً (اختلاف)
to save lives	يرتدى / يلبس	save lives	ينقذ الأرواح
to fight fires	يُخمد الحرائق		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
fight	يرن rang	fight	يكافح fought
keep	يحافظ على kept	make	يجعل - يصنع made

Listen and read.

Heroes Who Fight Fires

My neighbor, Omar, is a **firefighter** at our local **fire station**. He wears a thick **protective uniform** with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep him safe.

جاري عمر هو رجل إطفاء في محطة الإطفاء المحلي. يرتدي زياً واقياً سميكاً بخطوط صفراء لامعة وخوذة ثقيلة لحمايته.

Every day at the station, he checks his **equipment** and keeps the **big red fire truck** ready. He also makes sure everything is **clean** and in the **right place**. When the **alarm** rings, he quickly puts on his **equipment** and rides the truck with his team to help people in **danger**. He uses special tools like **water hoses**, **ladders**, and **oxygen tanks** to fight fires and save people.

كل يوم في محطة الإطفاء، يفحص عمر معداته ويحرص على أن تكون شاحنة الإطفاء الحمراء الكبيرة جاهزة. كما يتأكد من أن كل شيء نظيف وفي مكانه الصحيح. وعندما يدق جرس الإنذار، يرتدي معداته بسرعة ويستقل الشاحنة مع فريقه لمساعدة الناس في حالات الخطر. يستخدم أدوات خاصة مثل خرطوم المياه والسلالم وأسطوانات الأوكسجين لإطفاء الحرائق وإنقاذ الأشخاص.

Omar says the part he likes most about his job is **saving lives** and protecting our community. The work is **dangerous**, but he's proud to be a firefighter because he likes helping others and making a difference.

يقول عمر إن أكثر جزء يُحبه في عمله هو إنقاذ الأرواح وحماية مجتمعنا. العمل خطير، لكنه يشعر بالفخر لكونه رجل إطفاء، لأنه يحب مساعدة الآخرين وإحداث فرق.



Listen again and answer.

استمع مرة أخرى، ثم أجب.

1. What does Omar do?

2. Which tools does Omar use?

3. What does Omar like most about his job?

Lesson (3)

A non-fiction text



When you write a non-fiction text, ask yourself:

عندما تكتب نصًا غير خيالي، اسأل نفسك:

Is the information true?

هل المعلومات صحيحة؟

Did I make anything up?

هل ابتكرت أي شيء؟

Non-Fiction writing should include:

الكتابة غير الخيالية يجب أن تحتوي على:

An introductory sentence, like "My neighbor, Omar, is a firefighter at our local fire station."

جملة تمهيدية مثل: «جاري عمر يعمل رجل إطفاء في محطة الإطفاء المحلية..»

Details that are all true, like "He wears a thick protective uniform with bright yellow stripes ..."

تفاصيل حقيقية تمامًا، مثل: «هو يرتدي زيًا واقيًا سميكًا بخطوط صفراء لامعة...»

Adjectives, like "thick", "special tools", "big red fire truck".

صفات مثل: «سميك»، «أدوات خاصة»، «شاحنة إطفاء كبيرة حمراء»

Closing sentence, like "The work is dangerous, but he's proud to be a firefighter."

جملة ختامية مثل: «العمل خطير، لكنه فخور بكونه رجل إطفاء.»



A Teacher's Job

My neighbor, Soha, is a teacher at the local school. She uses books, notebooks, a whiteboard, and markers at work. She works in a classroom full of students. Every day, she explains lessons, gives homework, and helps students understand new things. She helps people by teaching children and helping them learn and grow. Her job is helpful because it builds the future and supports the community through education.

Origami Art

Origami is an art form that is made by folding paper to make shapes, animals, or objects.

يُعدّ فن الأوريغامي شكلاً من أشكال الفن يقوم على طي الورق لصنع أشكال أو حيوانات أو أشياء.



Look and learn how to make origami art that shows a job.

Origami is the Japanese art of paper folding. We can create amazing things with just paper!

To make origami art, you need ...

- colored paper squares
- scissors
- markers
- glue
- a ruler



When you make origami art, ...

- choose a job (like a doctor, teacher, nurse).
- pick colored paper that matches the uniform.
- follow the folding instructions.
- add details using markers (like glasses, a watch).



In pairs, make an origami of a nurse's uniform. Exchange the uniform with your partner and give them feedback.

The origami has ...

good folds.

correct uniform colors.

nice decoration.



Activities On Lessons 4&5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Omar likes saving
 a) lives b) birds c) animals d) insects
2. Omar's work is
 a) safe b) easy c) dangerous d) danger
3. He likes protecting our
 a) zoo b) field c) community d) park
4. Omar is proud to be a/an
 a) engineer b) doctor c) firefighter d) nurse

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A firefighter works at a fire
 a) house b) home c) station d) building
2. He wears a uniform.
 a) protect b) protected c) protective d) protection
3. A firefighter uses special like water hoses and ladders.
 a) tools b) bottles c) actions d) stripes
4. At the station, he his equipment.
 a) breaks b) checks c) runs d) reads
5. He makes sure everything is in the place.
 a) write b) left c) north d) right

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

brave - uniform - lives - stripes - hose

My neighbor, Omar, is a firefighter at our local fire station. He wears a thick protective 1) with bright yellow 2) and a heavy helmet to keep him safe. He is very 3) All people love him because he saves many 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Every day at the station, Omar, the firefighter checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready. He also makes sure everything is clean and in the right place. When the alarm rings, he quickly puts on his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in danger. He uses special tools like water hoses, ladders, and oxygen tanks to fight fires and save people.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Every day, Omar checks his
a) radio b) equipment c) messages d) e-mail
- He makes sure everything is and in the right place.
a) dirty b) clean c) near d) far

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Omar do when the alarm rings?

4. What does he use to fight fires?

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- omar is a firefighter
- does he like his job

6 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A firefighter's job

Guiding elements:

(fire station - equipment - fire truck - alarm)



Review on Unit (5)

Vocabulary

doctor	طبيب	protective	واقى
mentor	مُعلم / مُرشد	equipment	مُعدات
nurse	ممرضة	alarm	جرس
voice- over actor	مُمثل أصوات	fit	مناسب
carpenter	نجار	puppet	عروسة مُتحركة
engineer	مهندس	fire truck	عربة إطفاء
wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية	water hose	خرطوم ماء
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	promise	يُعد
teacher	مُعلم	uniform	زي
furniture	أثاث	wooden	خشبي
skilled	ماهر	fire station	محطة إطفاء

Pronunciation

face	وجه	gate	بوابة
nine	تسعة	slide	زحليقة
stone	حجر	rope	حبل
cube	مكعب	flute	ناي

Language

Superlative adjectives

Form:

the + short adjective + est

tall → the tallest

e.g. This tree is the tallest tree in the park.

Spelling notes:

big → the biggest

e.g. I find the biggest lions.

nice → the nicest

e.g. Mona is the nicest friend I have.

happy → the happiest

e.g. Nora is the happiest girl in the class.



Writing Corner

● Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

My job

Hi! I'm Ali. I'm an engineer. I wear a yellow helmet and a vest. I design new buildings. I love my job! I work in a big team.

An amazing job

Noha is a mentor. She does very kind and helpful work! She helps young students learn and grow. She helps shy students become brave. When they get good marks, it feels so nice. It makes her happy when they do well!

A skilled carpenter

Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. For many years, he built strong houses and beautiful furniture. People admired his work, and some traveled from far away just to see his wooden chairs and tables. He loves his job very much.

A firefighter's job

My neighbor, Omar, is a firefighter at our local fire station. He wears a thick protective uniform with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep him safe. He likes saving people's lives.

A teacher's job

Safia is a teacher. She works in a big school. At work, she uses a board, books and notebooks. Every day she explains lessons to her students. She helps them understand. She is very helpful.

Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

طبيب	زيّ موحد
ممرضة	خوذة
مُعلمة	سترة / صديري
مهندس	قبعة
رجل الإطفاء	مريض
ضابط شرطة	مهم

Lesson (2)

مثل أصوات	حيوانات برية
مصور الحياة البرية	الطبيعة
مُعلم / مُرشد	شخصية
عروسة متحركة	مُضحك
خجول	ذكي / ماهر
شجاع	حكيم

Lesson (3)

نجار ماهر	طلب
أثاث	ملتو / معوج
خشبي	لوح
هدية	مسمار
الندم	يعجب
يُعد	يقرر
مدى الحياة	يتقاعد

Lessons (4&5)

محطة إطفاء	أدوات
زيّ وافي	خرطوم ماء
معدات	سلم
عربة مطافئ	أسطوانة أكسجين
جرس	جار

Activities On Unit 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

ستمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Safia is a/an
a) teacher b) nurse c) engineer d) doctor
- She works in a big
a) hospital b) club c) zoo d) factor
- She helps doctors and
a) visitors b) writers c) runners d) patients
- She gives the people medicine.
a) good b) bad c) sick d) well

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

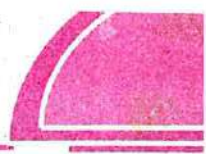
- A/An wears a white coat.
a) teacher b) carpenter c) doctor d) photographer
- When the rings, the firefighter moves quickly!
a) alarm b) mobile c) telephone d) tablet

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

alarm - danger - place - clean - hoses

Every day at the station, Omar checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready. He also makes sure everything is 1) and in the right 2) When the 3) rings, he quickly puts on his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in danger. He uses special tools like water 4) , ladders, and oxygen tanks to fight fires and save people.



Activities On Unit (5)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Salma works with puppets. She has a great job! She uses puppets to tell stories. "I do many shows for children," she says. "I love seeing their big smiles and hearing their loud laughs. It's fun when children enjoy the show!" Adel is a voice-over actor. He has an exciting job! He makes voices for cartoons. "I can make high voices and low voices," he says. "I talk very fast or very slow. I make little voices for small characters and loud voices for large ones!"

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Salma works with
a) dolls b) puppets c) toys d) games
- Adel is a voice-over
a) teacher b) doctor c) nurse d) actor

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does Salma do for children?
- How does Adel talk?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- The eagle is the (fast) bird.
- Anas is the (taller) student in the class.
- A firefighter carries the (heavy) tools.
- I think the teacher's job is the (nice) job.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- hoor is the happiest girl

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your favorite job

Guiding elements:

- What is the job? - Why do you like it? - What things do you do?

Al-Azhar Corner

1

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

like - job - teacher - big

- Safia : Hi, Anas! What's your father's 1)..... ?
 Anas : Hello, Safia! My father is a 2).....
 Safia : Where does he work?
 Anas : He works in a 3)..... school.
 Safia : Does he 4)..... his job?
 Anas : Yes, he does.

2

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

wear - sick - doctor - white

- Hoor : What's your job, Seif?
 Seif : I'm a 1).....
 Hoor : What do you 2)..... ?
 Seif : I wear a 3)..... coat.
 Hoor : What do you do at your job?
 Seif : I help 4)..... people.

3

Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. do - nurse - What - does - a - ?

 2. has - He - an - job - interesting - !

 3. the - Talia - kindest - is - mentor - .

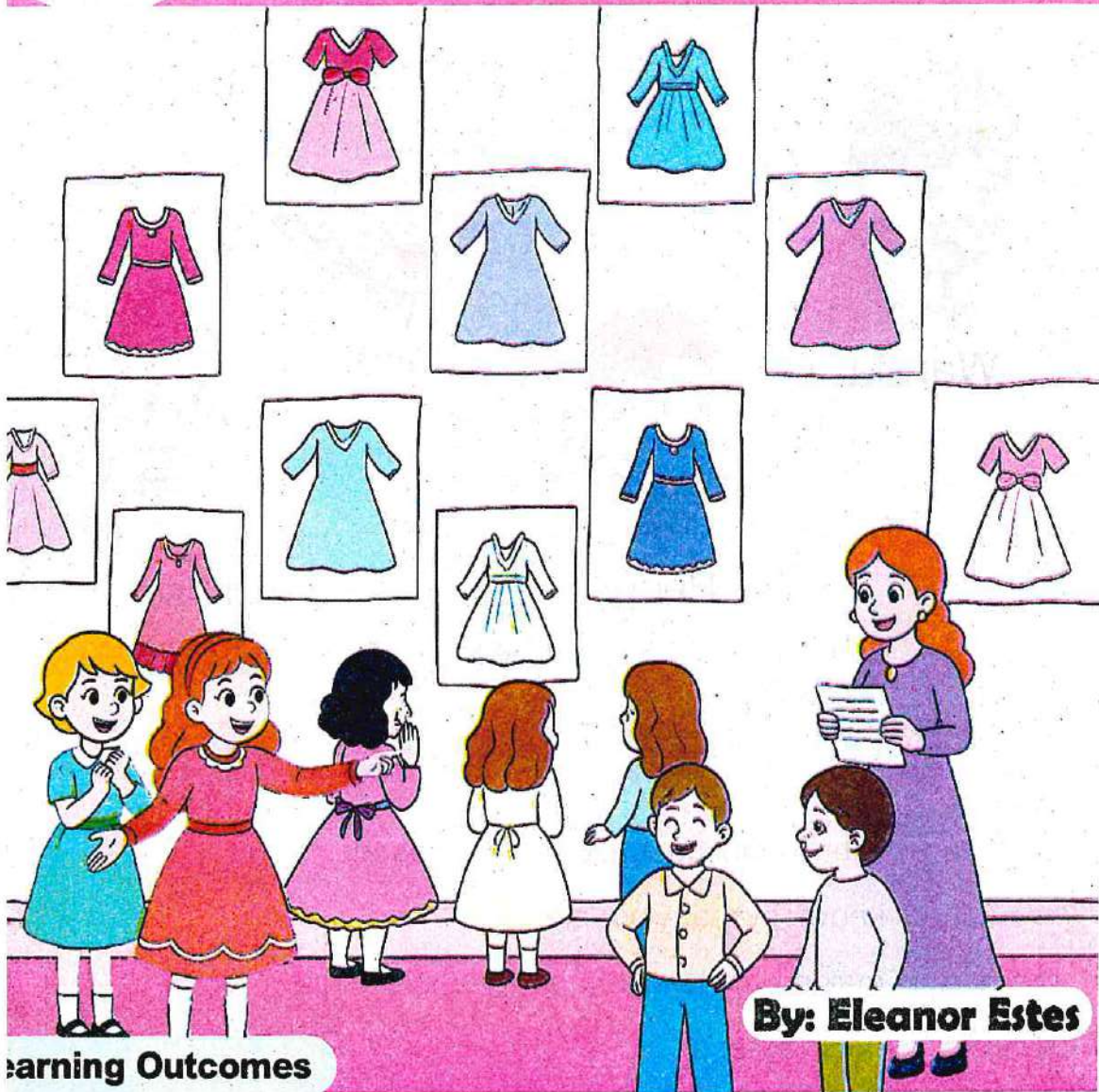
 4. carpenter - was - skilled - Sami - a - .

 5. work - does - she - Where - ?

Unit 6

The Hundred Dresses

الفساتين المائة



By: Eleanor Estes

Learning Outcomes

Express their favorite character in the story	يُعبر الطلاب عن شخصيته المفضلة في القصة
Discuss the moral lessons of a story	يُناقش الطلاب الدروس الأخلاقية المستفادة من القصة
Answer questions about the story setting, character and events	يُجيب الطلاب عن أسئلة تتعلق بمكان القصة وشخصياتها وأحداثها
Identify the elements of a story	يُحدد الطلاب عناصر القصة
Answer critical questions based on the story's events	يُجيب الطلاب عن أسئلة نقدية بناءً على أحداث القصة
Understand the sequence of events in a narrated story	يُفهم الطلاب تسلسل الأحداث في القصة المروية
Write a letter based on the story's events	يُكتب الطالب رسالة استناداً إلى أحداث القصة

Characters



Wanda



Maddie



Peggy



Miss Mason

Definitions

faded	light in color because it is old or used	هت
popular	known by many people	شهور
annoying	making you feel unhappy or a little angry	يعج
absent	not in a place	ائب
notice	to see or hear something	لاحظ
behavior	the way someone acts	ملوك
expensive	costs a lot of money	الي الثمن
bullying	hurting or scaring other people	تنمر
apologize	to say "I'm sorry" when you do something wrong	يتذر

Story Elements

عناصر القصة

Characters

الشخصيات

Wanda
Peggy
Maddie
Miss Mason

Setting

المكان

The school

Moral

المغزى / العبرة

We shouldn't judge others by their appearance.

ينبغي ألا نحكم على الناس بمظاهرهم.

Story Vocabulary



dress

فستان



playground

ملعب



drawings

رسومات



sign

يوقع



announce

يعلن



closet

دولاب ملا



competition

مسابقة



medal

ميدالية



letter

خطاب / رسالة



winner

فائز

Parts of the story

1 Beginning

- Wanda is a quiet girl in a small school.
واندا فتاة هادئة في مدرسة صغيرة.
- She always wore the same faded blue dress every day.
كانت دائماً ترتدي نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت كل يوم.
- Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda every morning.
كانت بيبي ومادي تضايقان وندا كل صباح.
- The other girls laughed at Wanda.
كانت الفتيات الأخريات يسخرن من وندا.

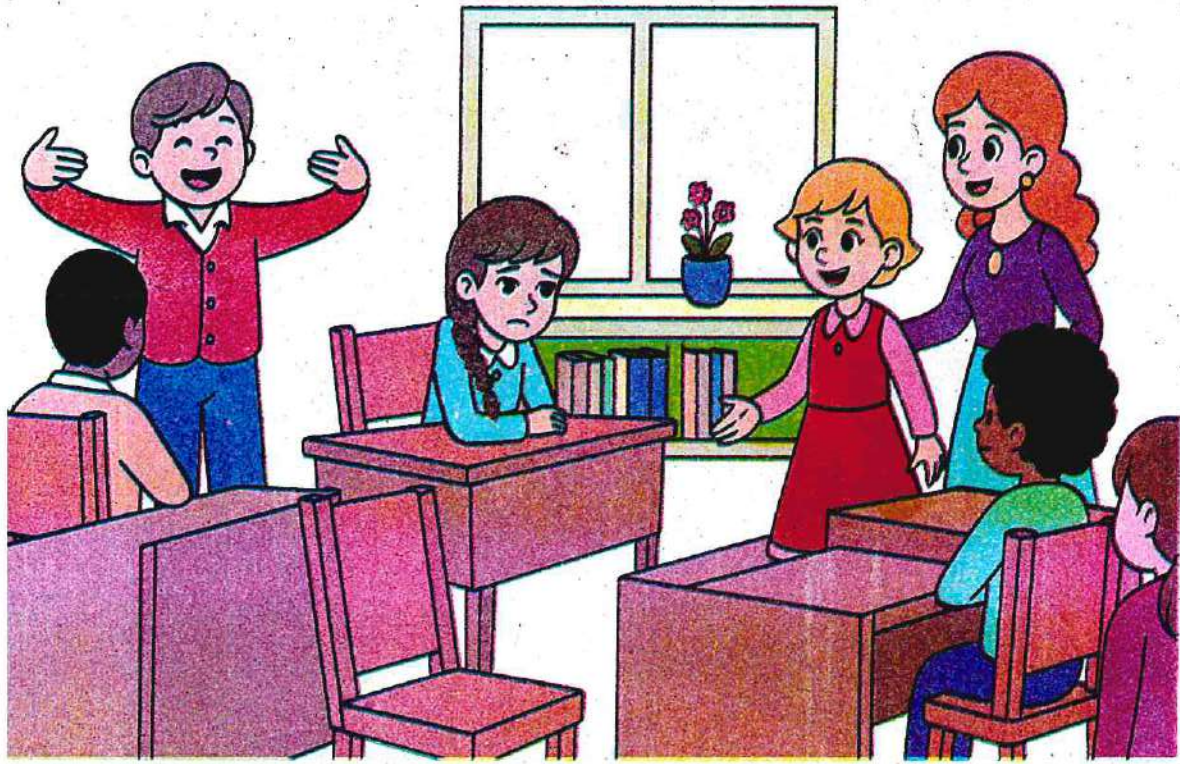
2 Middle

- There was annual drawing competition.
كانت هناك مسابقة الرسم السنوية.
- Miss Mason will choose one boy and one girl as winners.
ستختار ميس ميسون فتى وفتاة باعتبارهما فائزين.
- Wanda drew and signed all the drawings of dresses.
رسمت وندا ووقعت على جميع رسومات الفساتين.
- She won the medal.
وفازت بالميدالية.

3 End

- Wanda moved to a new big school.
انتقلت وندا إلى مدرسة جديدة وكبيرة.
- She didn't want to face unkindness.
لم تكن ترغب في مواجهة القسوة.
- Peggy and Maddie wrote her a letter to apologize.
كتب بيبي ومادي لها رسالة للاعتذار.
- Wanda thanked them and wanted them to keep the drawings.
شكرتهما وندا وأرادت أن تحتفظا بالرسومات.

The Beginning



In a small school, there was a girl named Wanda. She was a quiet girl who sat in the back of the classroom. Wanda always wore the same faded blue dress every day. Despite this, Wanda told everyone she had a hundred beautiful dresses at home, all lined up in her closet.

في مدرسة صغيرة، كانت هناك فتاة تُدعى واندًا. وكانت فتاة هادئة تجلس في آخر الفصل. كانت واندًا ترتدي دائماً نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت كل يوم. وعلى الرغم من ذلك، فقد أخبرت واندًا الجميع أن لديها مئة فستان جميل في المنزل، مصفوفة جميعها في خزانة.



The **popular** girls at school, especially Peggy and Maddie, **annoyed** Wanda every morning. One day, while they were in the playground, Peggy said, "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!" The other girls laughed. Maddie didn't like how they were annoying Wanda, but she stayed quiet. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's friendship. Soon, most of the girls were annoying Wanda and laughing about her hundred dresses.

كانت الفتيات الشهيرات في المدرسة، وخاصة بيجي ومادي، يضايقن واندا كل صباح. وذات يوم، بينما كن في ساحة اللعب، قالت بيجي: "مرحبًا يا واندا، أخبرينا عن فساتينك المائة!" فضحكت الفتيات الأخريات. لم تكن مادي تحب الطريقة التي يضايقون بها واندا، لكنها التزمت الصمت. وكانت مادي تخشى أن تفقد صداقة بيجي. وسرعان ما أصبحت معظم الفتيات يضايقن واندا ويسخرون من فساتينها المائة.

Activities

1 Read and write T (True) F (False).

- 1) Wanda was a quiet girl. (.....)
- 2) Wanda sat in the front of the classroom. (.....)
- 3) Wanda always wore a different dress every day. (.....)
- 4) Wanda had a hundred beautiful dresses at home. (.....)
- 5) All the dresses were lined up in her closet. (.....)
- 6) Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda every morning. (.....)
- 7) Maddie didn't like how the girls were annoying Wanda. (.....)
- 8) Maddie wasn't afraid of losing Peggy's friendship. (.....)

2 Read and complete with the words from the box.

popular - classroom - blue - closet - hundred

- 1) Wanda always wore the same faded dress every day.
- 2) Wanda sat at the back of the
- 3) The hundred beautiful dresses all lined up in the
- 4) The girls at school annoyed Wanda every morning.
- 5) Most of the girls were annoying Wanda and laughing about her dresses.

3 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where did Wanda sit in the classroom?
.....
- 2) What did Wanda always wear every day?
.....
- 3) Who annoyed Wanda every morning?
.....
- 4) What was Maddie afraid of?
.....

The Middle



One day, Miss Mason, the teacher, **announced** that it was time for the annual drawing competition. Miss Mason said, "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners." When it was time to announce the winners, to everyone's surprise, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful drawings of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda drew and signed all the drawings. She won the competition, but she wasn't there to receive her medal.

وذاٲ يوم؄ أعلنت ميس ميسون؄ المعلمة؄ أن الوقت قد حان لمسابقة الرسم السنوية. وقالت ميس ميسون: "سأختار فتى وفتاة كفاٲزين." وعندما حان وقت إعلان الفائزين؄ فوجئ الجميع بأن الجدران مغطاة بمائة رسمة جميلة لفساتين بألوان وتصاميم مختلفة. كانت واندا قد رسمت جميع الرسومات ووقعت عليها. وقد فازت بالمسابقة؄ لكنها لم تكن حاضرة لتتسلم ميداليتها.



Vanda was **absent** for several days, but no one **noticed**. Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's dad, saying that Wanda's family moved to the big city, where they wouldn't face unkindness. Peggy and Maddie felt terrible. They realized that when Wanda talked about her hundred dresses, she meant those drawings, her dreams on paper.

كانت واند غائبة لعدة أيام، لكن لم يلاحظ أحد ذلك. قرأت ميس ميسون رسالة من والد واند، يقول فيها إن عائلة واند انتقلت إلى المدينة الكبيرة، حيث لن تواجه قسوة أو معاملة سيئة. شعرت بيبي ومادي بالأسى الشديد. وأدركتا أن حديث واند عن المائة فستان لم يكن خيالاً، بل كانت تقصد تلك الرسومات، أحلامها المرسومة على الورق.

Maddie said to Peggy, "We need to write to Wanda and **apologize**." They wrote her a letter, saying, "Wanda, your drawings are beautiful and amazing. It's very sad that you aren't here to receive your medal. We are sorry for our **behavior** and hope that you're happy at your new school."

قالت مادي لبيبي: "نحن بحاجة إلى أن نكتب إلى واند ونعتذر." فكتبتا لها رسالة يقولان فيها: "واند، رسوماتك جميلة ومدهشة. من المحزن جداً أنك لست هنا لتسلمي ميداليتك. نحن آسفان على تصرفاتنا، ونأمل أن تكوني سعيدة في مدرستك الجديدة."

Activities

1 Read and write T (True) F (False).

- 1) Miss Mason announced the annual drawing competition. (.....)
- 2) Miss Mason would choose two boys and two girls as winners. (.....)
- 3) The walls were covered with a hundred beautiful drawings of dresses. (.....)
- 4) Peggy drew and signed all the drawings. (.....)
- 5) Wanda won the competition. (.....)
- 6) Wanda was absent for several days. (.....)
- 7) Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's mother. (.....)
- 8) Peggy and Maddie apologized for their behavior. (.....)

2 Read and complete with words from the box.

apologize – absent – walls – teacher – drawings

- 1) Miss Mason, the, announced the annual drawing competition.
- 2) The were covered with a hundred drawings of dresses.
- 3) Wanda drew and signed all the
- 4) Wanda was for several days, but no one noticed.
- 5) Maddie and Peggy needed to write to Wanda and

3 Answer the following questions.

- 1) What did Miss Mason announce?
.....
- 2) Who won the competition?
.....
- 3) Why didn't Wanda receive her medal?
.....
- 4) Why did Peggy and Maddie need to write a letter?
.....
- 5) Who read the letter from Wanda's dad?
.....

The End



Wanda received the letter at her new school. She was happy when she learned that the letter was from Maddie and Peggy. Then, Wanda wrote back to them, saying, "Thank you for your letter. I'm happy at my new school, and I want you to keep my drawings."

استلمت واند الرسالة في مدرستها الجديدة، وشعرت بالسعادة عندما علمت أن الرسالة كانت من مادي وبيجي. ثم كتبت واند لهما ردًا قالت فيه: "شكرًا على رسالتكما. أنا سعيدة في مدرستي الجديدة، وأرغب في أن تحتفظا برسوماتي."

This experience changed Peggy and Maddie forever.

They learned that kindness matters more than expensive clothes.

They promised to always speak up if there was **bullying**.

لقد غير هذا الموقف بيجي ومادي إلى الأبد. فقد تعلمتا أن اللطف أهم من الملابس الغالية، وتعهدتا بالدفاع دائمًا عن من يتعرض للتمييز.

Activities

1 Read and write T (True) F (False).

- 1) Wanda received the letter at her new school. (.....)
- 2) Wanda was sad when she learned that the letter was from Maddie and Peggy. (.....)
- 3) Wanda didn't write back to Maddie and Peggy. (.....)
- 4) Wanda was happy at her new school. (.....)
- 5) Wanda wanted Peggy and Maddie to keep her drawings. (.....)
- 6) The experience didn't change Peggy and Maddie. (.....)
- 7) Peggy and Maddie promised to speak up if there was bullying. (.....)

2 Read and complete with the words from the box.

Kindness – school - wrote - letter – happy

- 1) Wanda received the at her new school.
- 2) Wanda was when she received her friends' letter.
- 3) Wanda back to Peggy and Maddie.
- 4) Wanda was happy at her new
- 5) matters more than expensive clothes.

3 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where did Wanda receive her letter?
.....
- 2) How was Wanda when she learned about the letter?
.....
- 3) What did Wanda want Peggy and Maddie to keep?
.....
- 4) Did Peggy and Maddie change?
.....
- 5) What did Peggy and Maddie promise to do?
.....

General Activities

1 Who said this: Wanda, Maddie, Peggy or Miss Mason?

- 1) "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!" (.....)
- 2) "I want you to keep my drawings." (.....)
- 3) "We need to write to Wanda and apologize." (.....)
- 4) "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners." (.....)

2 Read and write T (True) F (False).

- 1) Wanda had one hundred real dresses. (.....)
- 2) Peggy and Maddie were always kind to Wanda. (.....)
- 3) Wanda won the annual drawing competition. (.....)
- 4) Wanda's family moved to the big city. (.....)
- 5) Miss Mason chose three girls as winners. (.....)
- 6) Wanda's mom sent a letter to Miss Mason. (.....)
- 7) Wanda wasn't there to receive her medal. (.....)
- 8) Peggy and Maddie wrote an email to Wanda to apologize. (.....)
- 9) Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda in the club. (.....)
- 10) Wanda won the medal. (.....)
- 1) Peggy and Maddie promised to always speak up if there was bullying. (.....)
- 2) Wanda told everyone about her one hundred blouses. (.....)
- 3) Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's dad. (.....)
- 4) Peggy and Maddie wrote a letter to Miss Mason. (.....)

3 Read and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1) Wanda always wore the same faded blue every day.
a) dress b) closet c) letter d) drawing
- 2) Miss Mason will choose one boy and one girl as in the competition.
a) walls b) winners c) playgrounds d) medals
- 3) Wanda drew and all the drawings in the competition.
a) moved b) sang c) spoke d) signed
- 4) Peggy and Maddie wrote a to Wanda to apologize.
a) behavior b) letter c) dream d) closet

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

playground - competition - announce - drawings

Miss Mason announced that it was time for the annual drawing competition. When it was time to 1) the winner, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful 2) of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda won the 3) , but she wasn't there to receive her medal.

5 Read and complete with words from the box.

to apologize - annoyed Wanda - they moved to the big city

- 1) One day in the playground, Peggy and other girls
- 2) The teacher read the letter from Wanda's dad and said
- 3) Peggy and Maddie wrote a letter to Wanda

Activities On Review 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Sami promised to give his
a) good b) better c) best d) bad
2. He slowly the house.
a) repaired b) bought c) sold d) destroyed
3. He made it and beautiful again.
a) weak b) ugly c) sad d) strong
4. Sami remembered who he was.
a) early b) truly c) slowly d) quickly

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Cairo is tall and has a great view from the top.
a) Oasis b) Tower c) Bazaar d) River
2. A/An helps sick people feel better.
a) teacher b) doctor c) engineer d) vet

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

gift - wood - carpenter - plastic - work

Sami was a skilled 1) who lived in a quiet village. After many years of hard 2), he felt tired and wanted to stop. But the king asked him to build one last house as a 3) to the village. Sami used weak 4) and didn't check the windows or the doors. When the house was finished, the king said it was for him. Sami was shocked. He knew he had worked poorly. He felt regret and promised always do his best.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar is a firefighter. He wears a blue uniform and a helmet to stay safe. Every day, he checks his equipment and keeps the fire truck ready. When people need help, Omar and his team quickly drive to help them. He uses a long water hose to stop fires. He also has a special ladder for tall buildings. He saves people and pets from fire. He loves his job because he likes saving people and animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The main idea of the text is about a
a) nurse b) doctor c) firefighter d) teacher
2. Omar uses a long water to stop fires.
a) truck b) ladder c) helmet d) hose

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Omar do when people need help?
4. Why does Omar love his job?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. The flowers are (on) two trees.
2. Omar is the (smart) student in our class.
3. The bird is (front) the cage.
4. Mona has the (short) hair in the group.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- where is the library

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A firefighter's job

Guiding elements:

(fire station - uniform - save - lives)

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

We have five senses. They are smell, taste sight, touch and hearing. We can see colors with our eyes. We can listen to music with our ears. We can taste ice cream with our tongue. Our senses are very important because they help us stay safe.

Lesson (2)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy. In the morning, she wakes up early at 6:00 a.m. She brushes her teeth and washes her face. Next, she does some simple exercises in the garden.

Lesson (3)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

One morning, Goha was walking through the market. He was very hungry, but didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a restaurant. He stopped and sat outside the restaurant.

Lessons (4&5)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Having a daily routine is important. Healthy habits help me stay strong. First, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

Activities on Unit (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

We have five senses. They are very important. They help us understand the world around us. We can see with our eyes. We can smell with our nose. We use our hands to touch.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Adam helps his community every week. He cleans trash from the streets with his friends. He also plants trees in the park. He feels so happy when he helps.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ali and Mona talk about traffic near schools. Ali says cars don't move fast in the morning. He thinks using the school bus is better. They also talk about trash. Ali says people now use bins, and the street is clean.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The Delta region is in the north, and Upper Egypt is in the south. People in The Delta region grow rice and work in factories. In Upper Egypt, they make pottery and carpets. Both places have special clothes and festivals. Egyptians love their traditions.

Lessons (4&5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, there was a wooden market. People sold fruits and vegetables. There were small houses, not tall buildings.

Activities on Unit (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Adam loves helping his community. Every Saturday, Adam cleans trash from the streets with his friends. He also plants trees in the park and feeds hungry dogs and cats.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Nadia's dad works at the forest park. He works as a forest guide. He shows the visitors elephants, monkeys, lions, and giraffes. Lions hunt at night. Giraffes eat leaves. Omar knows this from TV. He wants to visit the forest park one day.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs special care to live well.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The lion pretended to be sick and called animals to visit him. Many went in, but none come out. A wise fox saw the footprints and understood the trick. The fox ran away safely, laughing at the lion's plan.

Lessons (4&5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

Activities on Unit (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets often check their health.

Activities on Review (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Having a daily routine is important. Healthy habits help me stay strong. First, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ali is a tour guide in Egypt. He meets John who is visiting Egypt for the first time. He tells him that tourists like to take pictures here. John can ride a camel at the Pyramids.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The school is an important place. Students go there to learn and meet friends. Teachers help them. The library has many books to read or borrow.

Lessons (4&5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures.

Listening Texts

Activities on Unit (4)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

One important place in our city is the hospital. Doctors and nurses work there to help sick people feel better. When people get sick, they go to the hospital to receive care. Next to the hospital is the post office, where people send letters and packages.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

I'm Sara. I'm a doctor. I wear a white coat. I help sick people and check their health. I love my job because I like helping people.

Lesson (2)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Adel is a voice-over actor. He has an exciting job! He makes voices for cartoons. "I can make high voices and low voices. He talks very fast and very slow. He makes little voices for small characters and loud voices for large ones!"

Lesson (3)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

After a lifetime of hard work, Sami grew tired. He decided it was time to rest and stop building. But before he could retire, the village king came to him with a request. "Please build the last house," the king said. "It will be your final gift to the village."

Lessons (4&5)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Omar says the part he likes most about his job is saving lives and protecting our community. His work is dangerous, but he's proud to be a firefighter because he likes helping others and making a difference.

Activities on Unit (5)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

My sister Safia is a nurse. She works in a big hospital. She loves her job very much. She helps doctors and patients in hospital. She gives the sick people medicine.

Activities on Review (2)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Sami promised to always give his best, no matter how tired or busy he felt. He slowly repaired the house, board by board, and made it strong and beautiful again. And with each nail he hammered, Sami remembered who he truly was.

Answers of paragraphs

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

"Our senses"

We have five senses that help us understand the world. We smell with our nose, hear with ears, and taste with our tongue.

Lesson (2)

"My Healthy Day"

I wake up early and follow good habits. I eat healthy food, do exercise, and sleep well to stay healthy.

Lesson (3)

"Sharing things with others"

We should share things with friends and the poor. Sharing makes others feel better, and it brings happiness to everyone.

Lessons (4&5)

"Healthy daily routines"

I wake up early, brush my teeth, and get ready for school. Next, I eat breakfast and go to school. I sleep early.

Activities on Unit (1)

"Your healthy habits"

I wake up early. Then, I brush my teeth, wash my face, and eat healthy food every day. I do some exercises to stay strong.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

"Helping the community"

To help the community, I clean trash from the streets with my friends every Saturday. I plant trees in the park. Sometimes, I feed the dogs and cats. I feel so happy when I give them food.

Lesson (3)

"Upper Egypt"

Upper Egypt is in the south. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories.

Lessons (4&5)

A diary entry "Your community's history"

July 15, 2025

Dear Diary,

Today I learned that my community's past was very simple. People lived in mud houses and worked as farmers. There were no cars or tall buildings—just one school and a few shops. I want to learn more about old celebrations and traditions.

Yours truly,
Mahmoud

Activities on Unit (2)

"My community's history"

In my neighbourhood's history, people lived in mud houses and sold fruits in old markets. Life was simple and peaceful.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

"Animals"

Lions have yellow fur. They hunt at night. Giraffes have a spotted coat. They eat leaves from all trees. The zebra has a striped coat and it runs in groups.

Answers of paragraphs

Lessons (4&5)

"An endangered animal"

The Arabian Leopard is an endangered animal. It lives in Egypt and the Middle East. They are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

Activities on Unit (3)

"The lion"

The lion is a strong animal. It has yellow fur. It hunts animals at night. It sleeps during the day.

Activities on Review (1)

"Healthy habits"

I get up early every day. I wash my face and brush my teeth. I do some exercises. I eat healthy food. I sleep early.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

"Visiting the Pyramids"

The pyramids are very nice. Tourists take many pictures there. Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun. I love visiting the pyramids.

Lesson (2)

"Places in your town"

There are different places in my town. Young children go to school every morning to learn. They can borrow books from the library. When people feel sick, they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the shopping mall where many shops sell different things.

Lessons (4&5)

"The Pyramids"

The Pyramids are in Giza. They are very old. They tell us the history of Egypt. A lot of tourists take pictures there.

Activities on Unit (4)

"The hospital"

The hospital is an important place in my city. Doctors and nurses work there. They help sick people feel better.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

"My favorite job"

My favorite job is a doctor. I wear a white coat and help sick people and check their health.

Lesson (2)

"A wildlife photographer"

I am a wildlife photographer. I take photos of wild animals like lions and birds in nature. It's an interesting job.

Lesson (3)

"A carpenter"

A carpenter builds strong houses and makes furniture from wood. He uses tools to cut, shape, and join wooden pieces.

Lessons (4&5)

"A firefighter's job"

A firefighter works at a fire station. He checks his equipment, rides a fire truck, and answers alarms to save people. He uses special tools.

Activities on Unit (5)

"My favorite job"

My favorite job is a nurse. I wear a blue uniform. I work in a hospital. I help doctors and take care of sick patients.

Activities on Review (2)

"Firefighting"

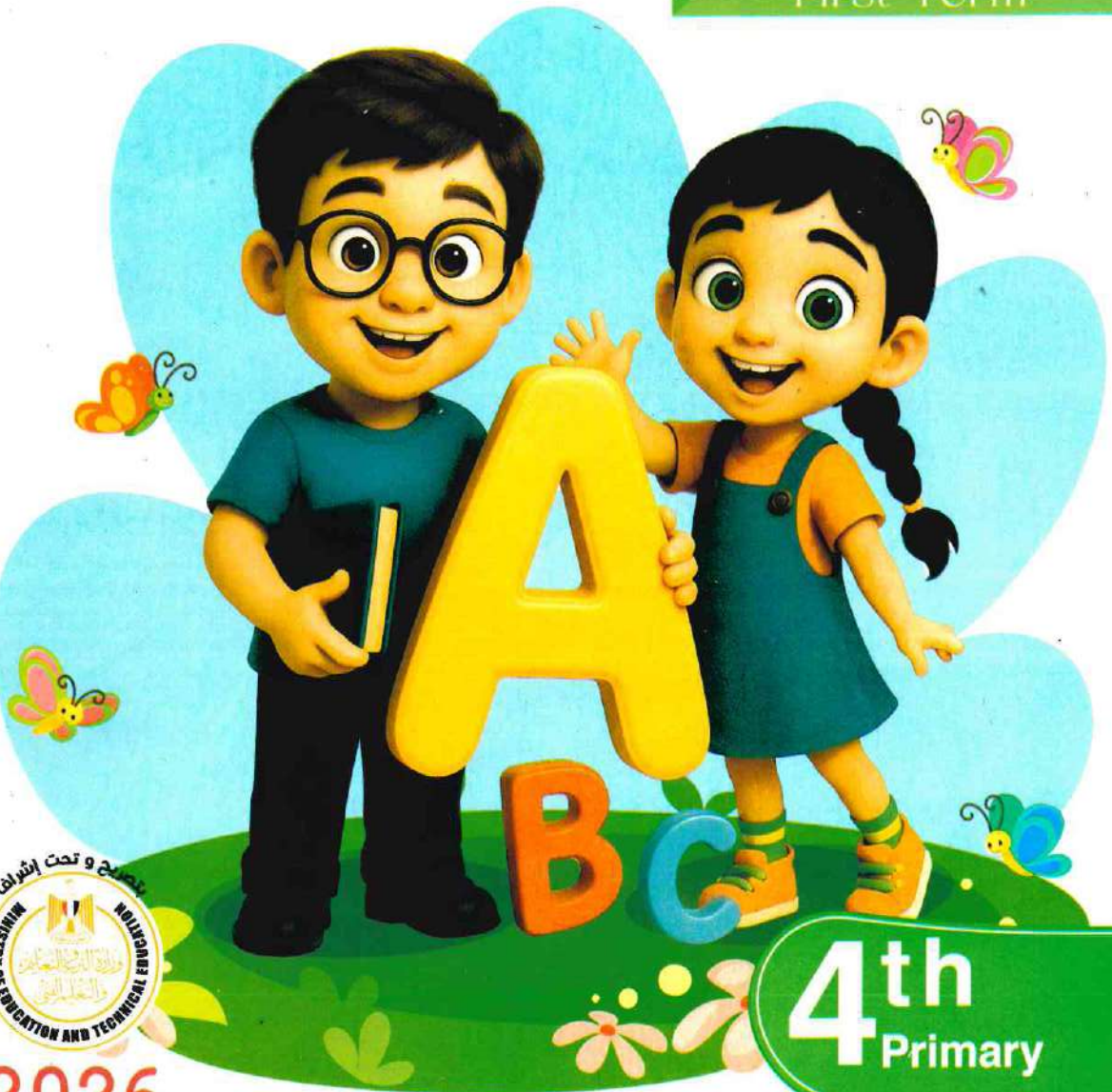
Firefighting is a brave job. Firefighters work at a fire station, wear a uniform, and save lives during dangerous fires. They use special tools to fit fires and save people.

AL-BAHER

English

Final Revision

الصف الرابع الابتدائي
First Term



2026

4th
Primary

LANGUAGE

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present simple for daily habits and routines.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

e.g. He **brushes** his teeth every day. e.g. The girls **watch** TV every day.

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / A plural noun + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. Some children **play** sports after school.

e.g. My brother and I **watch** TV in the morning.

He / She / It / A singular noun + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + (s / es / ies)

e.g. He **plays** football every day.

e.g. She **brushes** her teeth every day.

Spelling rules

1) We add "es" to the verb that ends in (ss, sh, ch, o, x, z)

نضيف «es» للفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (ss, sh, ch, o, x, z).

go → **goes**

brush → **brushes**

watch → **watches**

pass → **passes**

e.g. She **goes** to bed early at 8:30 p.m.

2) If the verb ends in (a consonant + y), we change (y) into (i) then we add (es).

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ «y» يسبقه حرف ساكن تحول الـ «y» إلى «i» ثم نضيف (es).

study → **studies**

cry → **cries**

e.g. My sister **studies** English every day.

3) If the verb ends in (a vowel + y), we add (s).

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ «y» يسبقه حرف متحرك نضيف «s» فقط.

play → **plays**

stay → **stays**

e.g. He **plays** football after school.

Negative النفي

(I / We / You / They / A plural noun) + **don't** + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.

(He / She / It / A singular noun) + **doesn't** + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. She **doesn't need** to use cars every day.

Note: don't = do not doesn't = does not

Question السؤال

Yes / No question:

Do + (I / we / you / they / a plural noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

- Yes, + الفاعل + do.

- No, + الفاعل + don't.

e.g. **Do** you **know** how to solve this problem?

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't.

Does + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

- Yes, + الفاعل + does.

- No, + الفاعل + doesn't.

e.g. **Does** your **street** have this problem?

- Yes, it does.

- No, it doesn't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?

e.g. **Where do** you **live**?

- I live in Giza.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

always	دائماً	usually	عادةً	often	غالباً
sometimes	أحياناً	every (day, ...)	كل	never	أبداً

e.g. She **always** wakes up early.

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Senses us understand the world around us.
a) help b) helps c) helped d) helping
2. Sarah good habits every day.
a) follow b) follows c) followed d) following
3. I up early at 6:00 am every day.
a) wake b) wakes c) waking d) waken
4. Ali always healthy food.
a) eat b) eating c) eats d) ate
5. Hend usually plenty of water between classes.
a) drink b) drinks c) drank d) drinking
6. In the evening, Aya a shower.
a) take b) took c) takes d) taking
7. Maher 6 hours every night.
a) sleep b) sleeping c) sleeps d) slept
8. go to bed at 10:00 p.m.
a) I b) She c) It d) He
9. brushes his teeth every day.
a) We b) He c) They d) I
10. My sister her backpack every day.
a) carry b) carries c) carrying d) carried
11. The boys TV every day.
a) watch b) watches c) watched d) watching
12. I and play with my friends.
a) is studying b) studying c) studies d) study
13. Do go to bed at 9:00 p.m?
a) she b) it c) you d) he
14. I go to school on Friday.
a) doesn't b) hasn't c) isn't d) don't
15. Layla drink water every morning?
a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Has

Language

16. Adam feed dogs or cats.
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't
17. Anisa collect plastic bottles?
a) Do b) Is c) Are d) Does
18. Lions often at night.
a) hunt b) hunts c) hunted d) hunting
19. My father go to work at night.
a) don't b) isn't c) doesn't d) aren't
20. the giraffe eat leaves?
a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are
21. They don't football in the street.
a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
22. She doesn't to school.
a) walks b) walked c) walking d) walk
23. many people ride camels near the pyramids?
a) Does b) Are c) Do d) Is
24. Does Omar new buildings?
a) design b) designs c) designing d) designed
25. My neighbor plant trees.
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. I (tastes) with my tongue.
2. She (hear) with her ears.
3. Hend (study) English every day.
4. We (watches) TV in the evening.
5. My brother and I (helps) sick people.
6. They (collects) clothes and give them to people.
7. Amira (volunteer) to help at the park.
8. Mona (brush) her teeth every day.

9. I (works) as a tour guide.
10. My friend (visit) the museum every month.
11. A doctor (wear) a white coat.
12. A firefighter (save) people from fires.
13. Sarah doesn't (brushes) her teeth.
14. (Does) you go to bed at 9:00?
15. We (doesn't) run in the street.
16. Ahmed (carry) his bag every day.
17. They (doesn't) work in factories.
18. She (don't) like pollution.
19. (Do) Ali ride his bike?
20. (Does) pets need daily care from their owners?
21. I (doesn't) feed animals in the zoo.
22. Do you usually (puts) books on the shelf?
23. Mazen doesn't (watches) movies on Friday.
24. (Do) the sun rise in the east?
25. We (doesn't) sleep in the library.

3 Read and follow the instructions between brackets.

اقرأ واتبع التعليمات بين الأقواس.

1. Yes, Sarah eats healthy food. (Change to a question)
2. He reads stories in the morning. (Use: They)
3. No, they don't use vitamins. (Change to a question)
4. Aya takes the bus to school. (Change to negative)
5. I brush my teeth every day. (Use: He)

Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

▶ We use **comparative adjectives** to compare two people, things, animals, etc.
 نستخدم صفات المقارنة لنقارن بين اثنين من الأشخاص أو الأشياء أو الحيوانات، الخ.

Form التكوين

adj. (صفة) + er + than



• tall → taller • clean → cleaner

Example: A giraffe is **taller than** a zebra.

Spelling rules قواعد الهجاء

1 If an adjective ends in a vowel and a consonant, **double the consonant** before you add **(er)**.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم نضيف (er).

• big → bigger • hot → hotter

Example: Bears are **bigger than** dogs.

2 If an adjective ends in **(e)**, we add **(r)** to the end of the adjective.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e)، نضيف (r) فقط إلى نهاية الصفة.

• safe → safer • nice → nicer

Example: Cats are **safer than** lions.

3 If an adjective ends in **a consonant and (y)**, **change (y) to (i)** and add **(er)**.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y)، وقبله حرف ساكن، نحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er).

• healthy → healthier • lazy → lazier

Example: Rabbits are **healthier than** other animals.

لاحظ

There are some irregular adjectives. يوجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة "يتغير شكلها".

good → better than

bad → worse than

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A zebra is than a giraffe.
a) short b) shorter c) the shortest d) shortest
2. The cat is than the mouse.
a) heavy b) heavier c) heaviest d) a heavy
3. Elephants are bigger monkeys.
a) the b) then c) than d) that
4. The car is than the bike.
a) fast b) fastest c) as fast d) faster
5. I think cats are than dogs.
a) nice b) nicer c) nicest d) the nicest
6. Rats are than ants.
a) bigger b) big c) biggest d) the biggest
7. Cats are than dogs.
a) safe b) safest c) safer d) as safe
8. Rabbits are than other animals.
a) healthy b) healthiest c) as healthy d) healthier
9. The lion is stronger the dog.
a) than b) then c) there d) this
10. Hend is than Mona.
a) lazy b) lazier c) the laziest d) laziest
11. My room is than my sister's room.
a) clean b) cleanest c) as clean d) cleaner
12. Summer is than winter.
a) hotter b) hottest c) the hottest d) hot
13. I think English is than French.
a) easy b) easier c) easiest d) the easiest
14. Parrots are than the spiders.
a) noisy b) noisiest c) noisier d) the noisiest

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. My house is (big) than yours.
2. The red bag is (heaviest) than the blue one.
3. Ali runs (fast) than Ahmed.
4. Today is (cold) than yesterday.
5. The Nile is (longest) than any other river in Africa.
6. The train is faster (then) the bus.
7. My homework is (easy) than my brother's.
8. Aya is (young) than Heba.
9. The red apple is (big) than the green one.
10. The sofa is (soft) than the chair.
11. The turtle is (slow) than the rabbit.
12. This puzzle is (easy) than the first one.
13. She looks (happy) than before.
14. The blue bag is (cheap) than the red one.
15. My grandma is (wise) than my grandpa.
16. Our street is (clean) than yours.
17. The train station is (busy) than the airport.
18. The red dress is (nice) than the black one.
19. His voice is (loud) than her voice.
20. His story is (short) than mine.
21. My car is (small) than your car.
22. Camels are (slow) than horses.
23. Dogs are (thin) than elephants.
24. The purple hat is (pretty) than the pink hat.
25. Aya is (old) than Heba.

Superlative Adjectives

صفات التفضيل

We use **superlative adjectives** to show the **greatest degree of something**.

نستخدم صفات التفضيل لبيان أعلى درجة لشيء ما.

Form التكوين

the + adj. (صفة) + est

- tall → the tallest

- clean → the cleanest

e.g. This tree is the tallest tree in the park.

Spelling rules قواعد الهجاء

1) If an adjective ends in a vowel and a consonant, double the consonant before adding **-est** to the end.

(١) إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك ثم حرف ساكن، ضاعف الحرف الساكن قبل إضافة «-est» في النهاية.

- big → the biggest

- hot → the hottest

e.g. I find the biggest lions.

2) When an adjective ends in **-e**, we add **-st** to the end.

(٢) عندما تنتهي الصفة بالحرف «-e»، نضيف «-st» في النهاية.

- nice → the nicest

- fine → the finest

e.g. Mona is the nicest friend I have.

3) If an adjective ends in a consonant and **-y**, we change **-y** to **-i** and add **-est** to the end.

(٣) إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن متبوعاً بـ «-y»، نغير «-y» إلى «-i» ثم نضيف «-est» في النهاية.

- happy → the happiest

- easy → the easiest

e.g. Nora is the happiest girl in the class.

لاحظ

There are some **irregular adjectives**. يوجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة «يتغير شكلها».

good → the best

bad → the worst

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. He bought phone in the shop.
a) the cheapest b) cheaper c) cheap d) the cheaper
2. They found the solution to the problem.
a) good b) as good c) better d) best
3. She is the singer in the party.
a) good b) better c) worst d) the better
4. The elephant is animal in the zoo.
a) large b) the largest c) larger d) as large
5. He climbed the mountain on Earth.
a) highest b) higher c) high d) as high
6. She's girl in the competition.
a) fast b) faster c) as fast d) the fastest
7. My dad is the person in our family.
a) wise b) wisest c) wiser d) as wise
8. It's house in the street.
a) the oldest b) older c) old d) old as
9. She has the voice in the class.
a) loud b) loudest c) louder d) the louder
10. My grandma is cook in our family.
a) the best b) better c) good d) the good
11. They choose the road.
a) safe b) safer c) the safer d) safest
12. She tells the jokes.
a) funny b) funniest c) funnier d) as funny
13. This puzzle is one I've tried.
a) hard b) harder c) the hardest d) hard as
14. This is the garden in the city.
a) prettiest b) prettier c) pretty d) as pretty
15. This is room in the hotel.
a) small b) the smallest c) smaller d) the smaller

16. Ali is boy in the class.
a) the tallest b) taller c) tall d) the taller
17. This is the cake I've ever seen.
a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the big
18. That was movie we've watched.
a) funny b) the funniest c) funnier d) the funny
19. Sara is the student in the school.
a) smart b) smarter c) as smart d) smartest
20. Today is the day of the year.
a) coldest b) colder c) cold d) the colder
21. The red car is car in the race.
a) fast b) the fastest c) faster d) the faster
22. This building is the one the city.
a) high b) higher c) highest d) the high
23. He is the boy in the team.
a) strongest b) stronger c) strong d) the stronger
24. That's child in the park.
a) happy b) happier c) the happy d) the happiest
25. This is the bag in the shop.
a) cheapest b) cheaper c) cheap d) the cheaper
26. She wears dress at the party.
a) nice b) nicer c) the nicest d) the nice
27. Ali is the student in the class.
a) lazy b) laziest c) lazier d) as lazy
28. Mona is the girl in the class.
a) quietest b) quieter c) quiet d) the quiet
29. This street is in the city.
a) clean b) cleaner c) the cleanest d) the clean
30. This is the hotel in my neighborhood.
a) big b) bigger c) as big d) biggest
31. This mountain is in the country.
a) the highest b) higher c) high d) as high

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. Ahmed is the (taller) boy in the class.
2. This is the (bigger) cake in the shop.
3. Today is (cold) day of the year.
4. This building is the (tall) in the city.
5. Omar is the (strong) boy in the school.
6. Ali is (happy) child in the park.
7. She wears the (nice) dress at the party.
8. Sami is the (lazy) student in class.
9. This is (cleaner) beach I've visited.
10. This mountain is the (tall) in the country.
11. Mona is the (fast) girl in the competition.
12. My grandfather is (old) one in our family.
13. She has the (loud) voice in class.
14. This lake is the (deeper) in the country.
15. He is (clever) student at maths.
16. My room is the (smaller) room in our home.
17. This is the (noisy) street in the city.
18. He bought (cheap) watch at the mall.
19. The whale is the (heavy) sea animal.
20. This is the (funny) story in the library.
21. Ali is (short) boy in the class.
22. The black socks are the (ugly) ones here.
23. This sweater is the (good) in the mall.
24. The red car is (fast) one.
25. My grandpa is the (old) in our family.

Prepositions of Place حروف الجر للمكان

Prepositions of place show **where** things are:

تُبين حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان مكان الأشياء. في

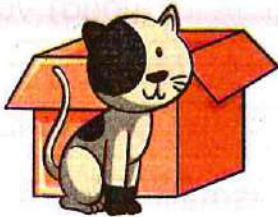
in	في	behind	خلف
on	على	next to	بجانب / بجوار
in front of	أمام	between	بين "الثنين"



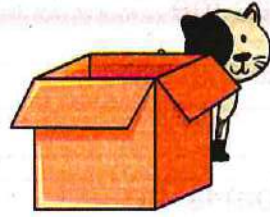
The cat is **in** the box.



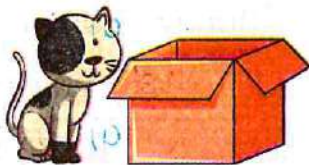
The cat is **on** the box.



The cat is **in front of** the box.



The cat is **behind** the box.



The cat is **next to** the box.



The cat is **between** the boxes.

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The cat is to the box.
a) in b) on c) behind d) next
2. The ball is the table and the chair.
a) between b) on c) behind d) in
3. The bag is the chair.
a) next b) in front c) between d) on
4. The books are the shelf.
a) in b) on c) of d) next
5. The dog is hiding the door.
a) behind b) in c) next d) between
6. The flowers are the vase.
a) to b) in c) between d) on
7. The clock is the wall.
a) on b) behind c) in d) next
8. The sofa is the window.
a) between b) in c) in front of d) on
9. The phone is the table.
a) at b) on c) between d) next
10. The chair is the desk and the bed.
a) on b) between c) behind d) in
11. The board is the teacher.
a) behind b) on c) in d) front
12. The cat is the sofa.
a) front b) between c) on d) in
13. The bag is the desk and the window.
a) between b) next to c) in d) on
14. The computer is the table.
a) in front b) on c) next d) in
15. The shoes are the door and the cupboard.
a) between b) on c) in d) behind

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. The book is (in) the table.
2. The cat is (in) to the box.
3. The bag is (front) the door.
4. The school is (next to) the hospital and the mosque.
5. The laptop is (in) the table.
6. The chair is (front) the desk.
7. The car is (on) the garage.
8. The photo is (in) the wall.
9. The phone is (between) the desk.
10. The story is (in) the chair.
11. The bag is (on) the cupboard and the fridge.
12. The board is (on) the teacher.
13. The pen is (next to) the pencil and the sharpener.
14. The lamp is (in) the table.
15. The books are (on) the bag.
16. The plant is (in) to the sofa.
17. The dog is (on) the bed and the chair.
18. The bus stop is (next) the supermarket.
19. The bird is (next) the cage.
20. The museum is (front) the library.
21. There is a clock (in) the wall.
22. There is a table (of) the sofa. I can't see it.
23. There is a computer (in) to the bookshelf.
24. There is a mouse (in front of) the chair. I can't see it.
25. We sat (next) the tree.



Review on Unit (1)

Vocabulary

see	يرى	First	أولاً
hear	يسمع	Next	التالي
smell	يشم / حاسة الشم	Then	ثم
taste	يتذوق / حاسة التذوق	After that	بعد ذلك
touch	يلمس / حاسة اللمس	Finally	في النهاية
sight	حاسة البصر	eat healthy food	يتناول طعام صحي
hearing	حاسة السمع	take a shower	يأخذ دش
tongue	اللسان	owner	المالك
nose	الأنف	jingling	جلجلة / رنين
hand	اليـد	hungry	جوعان
eye	عين	greedy	طماع
brush teeth	يغسل أسنانه بالفرشاة	share	يشارك
wash face	يغسل الوجه	money	نقود
go to bed early	يلـهـب للفرش مبكراً	do exercises	يمارس تمارين

Pronunciation

Short vowel sounds		Long vowel sounds	
pot	إزاء	plate	طبق
pen	قلم جاف	home	بيت
hat	قبعة	bean	حبة فول
		cone	مخروط
		feed	يطعم
		heat	يسخن

Language

The Present Simple Tense

Usage

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

Form

(I / We / You / They / A plural noun) + Inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- They **play** football after school.

(He / She / It / A singular noun) + Inf. (مصدر الفعل) + (s / es / les)

- He **watches** TV every day.

Activities On Unit (1)

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Toka is a girl.
a) bad b) naughty c) stupid d) good
- In the, she takes a shower and brushes her teeth.
a) evening b) night c) morning d) afternoon
- She goes to at 8:30 p.m.
a) school b) home c) bed d) park
- Getting enough sleep helps her body stay
a) calm b) healthy c) unhealthy d) unkind

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I use my to taste.
a) nose b) tongue c) hand d) eyes
- We with our nose.
a) touch b) see c) hear d) smell
- We music and voices with our ears.
a) hear b) taste c) see d) smell
- Senses help us the world around us.
a) eat b) drink c) understand d) stay
- Sarah sees colors and shapes with her
a) ears b) eyes c) tongue d) hands
- In the morning, he his face with water.
a) watches b) brushes c) washes d) drinks
- Ali lots of vegetables and fruits.
a) eats b) drinks c) brushes d) plays
- For breakfast, they drink juice.
a) chicken b) rice c) vegetables d) orange
- Sarah's healthy habits help her feel
a) unhealthy b) unhappy c) good d) unkind

Units

10. is the time and place of a story.
a) Setting b) Character c) Narrator d) Plot
11. is a light ringing sound.
a) Owner b) Jingling c) Greedy d) Hungry
12. He is a person. He always wants more than what is needed.
a) hungry b) greedy c) happy d) sad
13. My uncle is the of the garden.
a) teacher b) vet c) owner d) nurse
14. The children their breakfast in the morning.
a) eat b) feed c) drink d) read
15. I wash my face and get for school.
a) dress b) tie c) dressed d) address

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

study - brush - wake - sports - first

This is my healthy daily routine. I 1) up early at 6:00 a.m. and 2) my teeth. I go to school, where I 3) and play with my friends. I do my homework and then play 4) for one hour. I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

understand - fine - important - around - senses

- Mona : Hi, Haneen! How are you?
- Haneen : Hi, Mona. I'm 1), thank you.
- Mona : How many 2) do we have?
- Haneen : We have five senses.
- Mona : Why are they 3) to us?
- Haneen : Senses help us 4) the world around us.
- Mona : Yes, that's great.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name's Mariam. I'm in grade four. I like healthy food. I help my mom in the kitchen. My brother likes chocolate. Chocolate isn't healthy. My uncle has a garden. My cousins always have fresh fruits and vegetables from the garden. I like playing with my cousins in the garden and helping my uncle.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Mariam's brother likes
a) chicken b) potatoes c) chocolate d) food
- The underlined word " *healthy* " is the opposite of
a) unhealthy b) unkind c) unhappy d) untrue

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does Mariam like doing with her cousins?
- What does Mariam's uncle have?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- She (take) vitamins every morning.
- My brother and I (watches) TV in the evening.
- My friend (study) English every day.
- The doctor (help) sick people.
- He (reading) books in the morning.
- The girls (watches) TV every day.
- Some children (playing) sports after school.
- He (brushing) his teeth every day.
- We (hears) with our ears.
- Sarah (eat) healthy food every day.
- They (sleeping) early every night.

12. Layla (drink) plenty of water every morning.
 13. We (using) our tongue to taste.
 14. She (smell) with her nose.
 15. I (shares) food with my family.

7 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences.
 أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. are - the - What - senses - five - ?

2. hands - my - I - with - touch - can - .

3. our - safe - How - help - senses - can - us - stay - ?

4. see - eyes - shapes - colors - and - I - with - my - .

5. healthy - Which - you - do - habits - have - ?

6. 's - your - What - habits - healthy - ?

7. brushes - every day - He - teeth - his - .

8. dinner - after - the - I - wash - plates - .

9. you - How - healthy - stay - can - ?

10. 9 p.m - at - Finally - bed - to - I - go - .

11. routine - daily - This - healthy - is - my - .

8 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. I use my hands | a. but didn't have enough money. |
| 2. I have lunch | b. cats in the morning. |
| 3. Goha was hungry | c. to touch. |
| 4. The children feed their | d. with my family. |
1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

9 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. We see with | a. and place of a story. |
| 2. How can you | b. our eyes. |
| 3. I wash the | c. stay healthy? |
| 4. The setting is the time | d. plates after dinner. |
1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

10 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1. do you share food with your friend | ..... |
| 2. this is my daily routine | ..... |
| 3. we see with our eyes | ..... |
| 4. Layla drinks water every morning | ..... |
| 5. i wake up early at 6:00 in the morning | ..... |

10 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Healthy habits

Guiding elements:

(early - wash - brush - vegetables)

Our senses

Guiding elements:

(five - taste - eyes - smell)



Review on Unit (2)

Vocabulary

collect	يجمع	plant	يزرع	clean	نظيف
volunteer	يتطوع	problem	مشكلة	solution	حل
trash	قمامة	traffic	الازدحام المروري	bin	صندوق القمامة
ground	الأرض	Egypt	مصر	Upper Egypt	شمال مصر
the Delta	الدلتا	north	شمال	south	جنوب
culture	ثقافة	sugar cane	قصب السكر	celebrate	يحتفل
history	تاريخ	neighborhood	حي سكني	train station	محطة قطار

Pronunciation

/v/	/f/
van	factory
vest	flag
violin	frog
view	forest

Language

Present Simple "Negative / Question"

Negative:

(I / We / You / They / A plural noun) + don't + inf.

- I don't eat meat.

(He / She / It / A singular noun) + doesn't + inf.

- He doesn't go to school by car.

Yes / No question:

Do + (I / we / you / they / a plural noun) + inf. ...?

- Do you wear galabeyas?

- Yes, we do.

- No, we don't.

Does + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + inf. ...?

- Does Heba help her community? - Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

Activities On Unit (2)

- 1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
- I the streets with my friends.
a) help b) volunteer c) clean d) feed
 - I trees in the park.
a) plant b) feed c) clean d) collect
 - Sometimes, I clothes.
a) clean b) feed c) volunteer d) collect
 - I feel when I help others!
a) sad b) angry c) happy d) hungry
- 2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.
- Mai the ducks.
a) feeds b) plants c) volunteers d) gives
 - We trees in our park.
a) clean b) volunteer c) feed d) plant
 - Hani cleans from the street.
a) dogs b) trash c) neighbors d) clothes
 - They to help in the park.
a) help b) collect c) volunteer d) clean
 - We should put trash in
a) bins b) pins c) bars d) pens
 - I can the problem.
a) put b) take c) solve d) throw
 - happens because there are many cars on the road.
a) Trash b) Traffic c) Water d) Ground
 - The verb "put" has an past form.
a) illegal b) dislike c) irregular d) illogical
 - My community has a rich
a) history b) English c) Arabic d) Math

Units

10. If you leave ice in the sun, it will
a) illogical b) illegal c) dishonest d) disappear
11. We will my sister's birthday at the park tomorrow.
a) wear b) sing c) celebrate d) grow
12. Upper Egypt is in the
a) south b) north c) east d) west
13. Egyptian includes music, art, language and traditions.
a) clothes b) sports c) animals d) culture
14. We are our country and its history.
a) proud of b) excited c) kind d) worried
15. We live in a quiet and safe
a) garden b) station c) neighborhood d) mountain

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bins - started - dirty - neighbors - trash

Layla notices that her street is full of trash. Some people don't put
1) in the bins and throw trash on the ground. She feels sad to
see the street so 2) Layla talks to her 3), and they
decide to put more bins around the area. After a few days, the street looks
much cleaner because everyone starts using the 4)

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

great - feed - Do - park

- Amira : Adam, how do you help the community?
- Adam : Sometimes, I 1) the dogs and cats.
It makes me happy!
- Amira : That's really nice! 2) you plant trees, too?
- Adam : Yes, I do. I help plant trees in the 3)
- Amira : That's great! You're doing a 4) job!

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Egypt has two special areas. The Delta region in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each place has its own traditions. In the Delta region, people grow rice and cotton and celebrate the Spring Festival. In Upper Egypt, they make pottery and celebrate the sugar cane harvest. People wear different clothes in both places. Although they are different, Egyptians love their culture and enjoy celebrating together.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Delta region is in the
a) north b) south c) east d) west
2. In Upper Egypt, people make
a) rice b) pottery c) cotton d) brick

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. Do Egyptians love their culture?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. We (doesn't) feed the ducks every day.
2. (Does) you help in the park?
3. Ali (don't) plant trees in the park.
4. (Do) Mona clean the street?
5. Do they (collects) clothes?
6. No, she (don't) like math.
7. Does Heba (solves) the problem?
8. Yes, we (does) our homework in the afternoon.
9. I don't (throws) trash on the ground.
10. (Does) you live in a city or a village?

11. He doesn't (likes) loud noise.
12. (Do) the car move very quickly?
13. They (doesn't) build new houses.
14. The giraffe (don't) eat fish.
15. Heba (don't) eat in the library.

7 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1. volunteer - They - help - park - the - in - to - .

2. plant - Do - trees - you - ?

3. don't - We - use - need to - cars - every day - .

4. She - her - helps - neighbors - .

5. put - everywhere - We - bins - new - .

6. he - Does - take - to - the bus - school - ?

7. has - special - Egypt - two - regions - .

8. work - in - I - factory - a - .

9. place - Each - has - traditions - own - its - .

10. sold - People - fruit - fresh - in - market - the - .

8 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. We clean the street and | a. cycle to school. |
| 2. Which part of | b. collect bottles. |
| 3. We should | c. Egypt are you from? |
1. () 2. () 3. ()

9 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. In Upper Egypt, men | a. safely in the streets. |
| 2. Children played | b. wear galabeyas. |
| 3. Houses are painted in | c. bright colors in Nubia. |
1. () 2. () 3. ()

9 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1. Does mona help her community | ..... |
| 2. the tall buildings weren't there | ..... |
| 3. what festivals do you celebrate | ..... |
| 4. egyptians are proud of their culture | ..... |
| 5. we don't like pollution | ..... |

10 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Helping the community

Guiding elements:

(clean - plant - collect)

Traditions in the Delta

Guiding elements:

(spring festival - farmers - factories)



Review on Unit (3)

Vocabulary

lion	أسد	forest guide	مرشد الغابة	catch animals	يصطاد حيوانات
monkey	قرد	vet	طبيب بيطري	trick	يخدع / خدعة
elephant	فيل	forest officer	حارس الغابة	footprints	آثار أقدام
giraffe	زرافة	owner	مالك	hunt	يصطاد
zebra	حمار وحشي	cage	قفص	cave	كهف
bear	دُب	sick	مريض	lay down	رقد / استلقى
endangered	مهدد بالانقراض	protect	يحمي	in danger	في خطر

Pronunciation

frown	يعبس	plane	طائرة	draw	يرسم
fruit	فاكهة	plant	نبات	drum	طبلة

Language

Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

► We use **comparative adjectives** to compare two people, things, animals, etc.

نستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين اثنين من الأشخاص أو الأشياء أو الحيوانات، إلخ.

adj. + er + than

Example: A giraffe is **taller than** a zebra.

Bears are **bigger than** dogs.

Rabbits are **healthier than** other animals.

Today is **colder than** yesterday.

Activities On Unit (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- There was an old who couldn't hunt.
a) lion b) cat c) fox d) bear
- He was too to catch animals for food.
a) strong b) weak c) tall d) small
- He thought of a clever
a) plan b) lesson c) trick d) way
- The lion to be very sick.
a) took b) went c) pretended d) lay

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The has thick fur and sharp claws.
a) zebra b) bear c) monkey d) giraffe
- The zebra has a coat. It runs in groups.
a) spotted b) striped c) black d) yellow
- can climb trees.
a) Monkeys b) Elephants c) Zebras d) Cows
- The elephant has a heavy
a) ear b) eye c) trunk d) tail
- Birds need clean
a) houses b) homes c) cages d) bottles
- often check animals' health.
a) Nurses b) Teachers c) Drivers d) Vets
- A is a large hole in a mountain.
a) cave b) mice c) house d) river
- Many animals are in of disappearing.
a) goal b) dangerous c) endangered d) danger
- The Red Sea is an endangered animal.
a) Leopard b) Lion c) Dugong d) Whale

Units

10. We should learn from the of others.
a) mistakes b) pets c) tricks d) shapes
11. The is the king of the jungle land.
a) fox b) lion c) monkey d) bear
12. The bear fish.
a) takes b) makes c) catches d) hunts
13. A forest shows visitors the animals.
a) guide b) vet c) teacher d) nurse
14. Pets need daily from their owners.
a) homes b) spaces c) care d) way
15. "....." means put yourself on a surface like the ground or a bed.
a) Hunt b) Lie down c) Pretend d) Catch

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

lay - pretended - cave - hunt - footprints

There was an old lion. He was very weak and couldn't 1)
He tricked animals and 2) to be sick in his cave. He called to the
animals and asked them to visit him before he died. Many animals entered
and never returned. A wise fox noticed the one-way 3)
He didn't go into the 4) and ran away safely.

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

teacher - Do - guide - elephants - climbing

- Omar : Hi, Nadia! What does your dad do at the forest park?
- Nadia : He works as a forest 1) He shows visitors the animals.
- Omar : 2) you usually go with him?
- Nadia : Sometimes.
- Omar : What animals do visitors see?
- Nadia : Lots of them! They see 3) drinking water and
monkeys 4) trees.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs special care to live well. Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets often check their health.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Animals need our help to stay and safe.
a) sad b) hungry c) healthy d) angry
- The underlined pronoun " *their* " refers to
a) lions b) giraffes c) spaces d) trees

B) Answer the following questions.

- What do zoo animals need?
- Who checks animals' health?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- A zebra is (short) than a giraffe.
- Bears are (big) than dogs.
- Ali is (tall) than his sister.
- The weather today is (cold) than yesterday.
- Rabbits are (healthy) than other animals.
- Marwa is (lazy) than her brother.
- A mouse is (small) than a rabbit.
- A cheetah is (fast) than a turtle.
- The music is (loud) than the conversation.
- Eating vegetables is (healthy) than eating junk food.

11. The lion is (strong) than the monkey.
12. Omar is taller (as) Ali.
13. Spring is (good) than summer.
14. Elephants need (big) spaces than monkeys.
15. Who is (young), Ali or Mazen?

7 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences.
 أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. do – need – What – lions – ?

2. care – their – Pets – need – owners – daily - from - .

3. health – often – Vets – animals' – check – .

4. has – The – a – long – monkey – tail – .

5. eat – from – Giraffes – trees – leaves – .

6. you – go – Do – him – with – usually – ?

7. watch – I – program – a – TV – animals – about – .

8. taller – Omar – his – is – than – friend – .

9. catch – food – The lion – couldn't – animals – for – .

10. hit – easily – I – the drum – can – .

8 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| 1. The bear has | a. are marks left by feet. |
| 2. Lions often | b. thick fur. |
| 3. Footprints | c. hunt at night. |

1. ()

2. ()

3. ()

9 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Zoo animals need | a. the mistakes of others. |
| 2. How should we | b. special attention. |
| 3. I learn from | c. exercise our pets? |

1. ()

2. ()

3. ()

9 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- a wise fox came near the cave
- that's interesting
- she has a nice plant in her room
- how are you feeling
- why should we protect animals

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

10 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Helping animals

Guiding elements:

(healthy - care - vets)

.....

.....

The Arabian Leopard

Guiding elements:

(endangered - Middle East - habitats)

.....

.....



Review on Unit (4)

Vocabulary

Pyramids	الأهرامات	tourist	سائح	hospital	مستشفى
Nile River	نهر النيل	gift	هدية	library	مكتبة
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	borrow	يستعير	school	مدرسة
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	nature	طبيعة	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	package	طرد	post office	مكتب بريد
blog	مدونة	letters	رسائل / خطابات	stores	محلات
leaflet	منشور	history	تاريخ	restaurant	مطعم
mountain	جبل	monastery	دير	adventure	مغامرة
Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري	Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar	سوق خان الخليلي		

Pronunciation

/p/			/b/		
pear	كثيري	pin	bear	دُب	bin
peak	قمة	pat	bond	رابطه	bat
pond	بركة "ماء"	pan	ban	منع وحظر	beak

Language

Prepositions of place

حروف الجر للمكان

in	في	behind	خلف
on	على	next to	بجوار
in front of	أمام	between	بين "اثنين"

e.g - The cat is **in** the box.

e.g - The cat is **between** the table and the chair.

Activities On Unit (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Ali is a
a) teacher b) tourist c) tour guide d) vet
- Ali shows tourists places in Egypt.
a) interesting b) bad c) good d) small
- The are very nice.
a) malls b) Cairo Tower c) Pyramids d) camels
- Tourists can pictures at the Pyramids.
a) go b) take c) make d) ride

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Siwa has lots of trees and water.
a) Oasis b) River c) City d) Town
- We went to the Khan Al-Khalili to buy gifts.
a) Tower b) Bazaar c) School d) Museum
- The River is a very long river in Egypt.
a) Red b) Suez c) Egyptian d) Nile
- The Egyptian Museum has many to see.
a) books b) stores c) treasures d) gifts
- At the Pyramids, tourists can camels.
a) take b) go c) ride d) cycle
- We read or borrow books from the
a) library b) school c) hospital d) Nile
- When people feel sick, they go to
a) museum b) store c) mall d) hospital
- Mom cooks eggs in the
a) pond b) pan c) ban d) bin
- St. Catherine is in South Sinai, Egypt.
a) City b) Mountain c) Town d) Mosque

Units

10. People can learn about at the museum.
a) math b) history c) animals d) plants
11. The Egyptian is full of history.
a) Museum b) Tower c) River d) Bank
12. Doctors help people feel better.
a) good b) small c) sick d) strong
13. We throw our trash in the
a) bin b) pin c) band d) pan
14. The shows when the blog was written.
a) date b) title c) name d) details
15. A is a thousand million.
a) hundred b) billion c) thousand d) million

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

books - shopping mall - borrow - sick - school

There are different places in my town. Young children go to 1) every morning to learn. They can 2) books from the library. When people feel 3) , they go to hospital. People enjoy going to the 4) where many shops sell different things.

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

Where - ride - What - meet - Pyramids

- Omar : Hi, I'm Omar! Welcome to Egypt!
- Tom : Nice to 1) you, Omar! I'm Tom.
- Omar : 2) are you from?
- Tom : I'm from London. What can I visit here?
- Omar : You can visit the 3)
- Tom : Can I 4) a camel there?
- Omar : Yes!

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People visit it to learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. People visit the old to learn about its history.
a) tower b) mountain c) monastery d) park
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a) nature b) St. Catherine Mountain c) family d) top

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where is St. Catherine Mountain located?
4. Why do people wear warm clothes?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. The cat is (under) the two boxes.
2. My family picture is (in) the wall.
3. The ducks swim (on) the pond.
4. The flowers are (on) two trees.
5. The bird is (from) the cage.
6. There is a car (next) of my house.
7. Ali is hiding (on) the sofa.
8. The plant is (under) a book and a notebook.
9. There is a school (front) to my house.
10. I put my books (under) my bag.

11. My cat is sleeping (in) the bed.
12. There is a TV (on) the table.
13. Boys are playing (on) the garden.
14. My house is (front) to a bank.
15. Put your trash (next to) the bin.

7

Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. I - ride - Can - a camel - ?
.....
2. has - trees - The Siwa - lots of - Oasis - .
.....
3. there - places - Are - more - visit - to - ?
.....
4. buy - Khan - We - gifts - Al-Khalili - from - Bazaar - .
.....
5. many - The Library - books - to read - has - .
.....
6. go to - learn - Student - school - to - .
.....
7. can - go - Where - we - books - to borrow - ?
.....
8. cooks - in - pan - Mom - eggs - the - .
.....
9. is - the - How - in the - weather - morning - ?
.....
10. next - The hospital - post - is - to - office - the - .
.....

8 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1. I can borrow books
2. My favorite place
3. Why do you

- a. go to school?
- b. is the shopping mall.
- c. from the library.

1. ()

2. ()

3. ()

9 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1. The Cairo Tower
2. People send letters
3. 4,000 is

- a. four thousand.
- b. is very tall.
- c. at the post office.

1. ()

2. ()

3. ()

9 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. what do visitors wear
2. i like to visit the pyramids.
3. We get water from the Nile river.
4. nice to meet you
5. can you ride a camel

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

10 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The Pyramids

Guiding elements:

(nice - pictures - camels - fun)

Places in your city

Guiding elements:

(school - library - learn - borrow)



Review on Unit (5)

Vocabulary

doctor	طبيب	protective	واقى
mentor	معلم / مُرشد	equipment	معدات
nurse	ممرضة	alarm	جرس الإنذار
voice- over actor	مُمثل أصوات	fit	مناسب
carpenter	نجار	puppet	عروسة متحركة
engineer	مهندس	fire truck	عربة إطفاء
wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية	water hose	خرطوم ماء
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	promise	وعد
teacher	معلم	uniform	زي موحد
furniture	أثاث	wooden	خشبي
skilled	ماهر	fire station	محطة إطفاء

Pronunciation

face	وجه	gate	بوابة
nine	تسعة	slide	زحليقة
stone	حجر	rope	حبل
cube	مكعب	flute	ناي

Language

Superlative adjectives

Form:

the + short adjective + est

tall → the tallest

e.g. This tree is the tallest tree in the park.

Spelling notes:

big → the biggest

e.g. I find the biggest lions.

nice → the nicest

e.g. Mona is the nicest friend I have.

happy → the happiest

e.g. Nora is the happiest girl in the class.

Activities On Unit (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Amr is a wildlife
a) teacher b) doctor c) photographer d) engineer
- He has a/an job.
a) interesting b) bad c) boring d) dull
- He takes pictures of wild
a) plants b) trees c) animals d) flowers
- He takes great photos in places.
a) close b) faraway c) away d) near

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- An engineer new buildings.
a) buys b) sells c) designs d) breaks
- A helps the doctor with his work.
a) teacher b) nurse c) carpenter d) actor
- A doctor wears a white
a) boat b) shirt c) vest d) coat
- A firefighter stops
a) rain b) fires c) traffic d) people
- A helps young students learn and grow.
a) mentor b) singer c) dancer d) cleaner
- Hoor is a wildlife
a) carpenter b) engineer c) photographer d) doctor
- Salma uses to tell stories for children.
a) mountains b) rivers c) puppets d) lakes
- It's dangerous to take photos of animals.
a) white b) whole c) hole d) wild
- A is used to take photos.
a) pen b) camera c) rubber d) glue

Units

10. "....." means to be the right size.
 a) Get b) Fit c) Hit d) Skilled
11. We play on the in the park.
 a) slide b) side c) gate d) fountain
12. Our house has a very big
 a) hill b) gate c) bait d) flute
13. A firefighter works at a station.
 a) candy b) sweet c) fire d) play
14. He wears a protective
 a) uniform b) shirt c) shorts d) trousers
15. My brother is a -over actor.
 a) sound b) voice c) run d) jump

3

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

voices - characters - exciting - low - cartoons

Adel is a voice-over actor. He has an 1) job! He makes voices for 2) "I can make high voices and 3) voices," he says. "I talk very fast or very slow. I make little voices for small 4) and loud voices for large ones!"

4

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

health - doctor - sick - clean - job

Ms. Hala : Let's talk about your costumes.

Sarah : I'm a 1)..... . I wear a white coat.

Ms. Hala : What do you do at your 2)..... ?

Sarah : I help 3)..... people.

Ms. Hala : What else do you do?

Sarah : I check their 4).....

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Noha is a mentor. She helps young students learn and grow. She says, "I help shy students become brave. It makes me happy when they do well and get good marks." Amr is a wildlife photographer. He takes pictures of wild animals. He waits a long time to get the best photos. Salma uses puppets to tell stories for children. She loves seeing their big smiles. Adel is a voice-over actor. He makes voices for cartoons.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Salma uses to tell stories.
a) dolls b) puppets c) voices d) sounds
2. Noha helps students learn and
a) bake b) take c) break d) grow

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Adel do?
4. What does Amr take?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. She is (nice) girl in the class.
2. Elephants are (then) biggest animals.
3. Hoor is (taller) girl in the family.
4. This is the (big) pizza in the shop.
5. That boy is the (thin) in the street.
6. Omar is (faster) one in the class.
7. The Atlantic Ocean is the (deep).
8. The tortoise is (slower) animal.
9. August is the (hot) month of the year.
10. The River Nile is the (long) river in the world.

11. My brother is the (fat) in the family.
12. The teacher's job is the (hard) job.
13. This is the (big) box in the room.
14. A firefighter carries the (heavy) tools.
15. Nora is the (nice) friend I have.

7 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences.
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. nurse - What - do - a - does - ?
.....
2. fires - A firefighter - and - stops - people - saves - .
.....
3. wears - coat - A doctor - a white - .
.....
4. engineer - What - wear - does - an - ?
.....
5. puppets - Salma - with - works - .
.....
6. mentor - Noha - a - is - .
.....
7. wildlife - Amr - photographer - a - is - .
.....
8. Salma's - What - job - is - ?
.....
9. want - be - do - What - you - to - ?
.....
10. helps - students - Noha - shy - .
.....

8 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Amr takes pictures | a. and being in nature. |
| 2. He is a smart | b. of wild animals. |
| 3. He likes wild animals | c. wildlife photographer. |

1. ()

2. ()

3. ()

9 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Sami was a | a. to tell stories. |
| 2. He built strong | b. skilled carpenter. |
| 3. She used puppets | c. houses and furniture. |

1. ()

2. ()

3. ()

9 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. why did Samy stop working
2. my sister can play the flute
3. omar is a firefighter
4. why is her job helpful
5. he works at a fire station

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

10 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A mentor's job

Guiding elements:

(kind - helps - learn - shy)

Puppets

Guiding elements:

(great - tell - shows - smiles)

Glossary of Words and Phrases

Category	Word	Definition
Action Words	Run	يجري Move quickly
	Draw	يرسم To make a picture with a pencil or pen
	Plant	يزرع To place seeds in the soil to grow
	Exercise	يتمرن To move your body to stay healthy
	Clean	ينظف To remove dirt or mess
	Announce	يُعلن To say something officially
Animal Words	Giraffe	زرافة A tall African animal with a long neck
	Elephant	فيل A large animal with a trunk
	Monkey	قرد A playful animal that swings on trees
	Zebra	حمار وحشي A striped animal from Africa
	Fox	ثعلب A small wild animal with red fur
	Lion	أسد A large wild cat
	Endangered	مهدد بالانقراض Animal species at risk of disappearing
Classroom Words	Hunt	يصطاد To chase or capture for food
	Look at the ...	ينظر إلى ... Asking to observe something
Community Words	Neighbor	جار A person who lives near you
	Trash	قمامة Waste or garbage
	Trees	أشجار Plants with trunks and leaves
	Street	شارع A road in a city or town
	Factory	مصنع A place where products are made
	Flag	علم A symbol of a country
Culture Words	Tradition	عادة / تقليد A custom passed down through generations
	Festival	احتفال A celebration with food, music, or dancing
Descriptive Phrases	It is big	إنه كبير Used to describe a large object
Events	Medal	ميدالية A prize given to a winner
	Competition	مسابقة A contest between people or teams
	Winner	فائز The person who finishes first
Greetings	Hello	أهلاً A polite way to greet someone

<i>Healthy Habits</i>	Water	ماء	A drink that keeps the body hydrated
	Fruit	فاكهة	A healthy food like apples or bananas
	Vegetable	خضراوات	A healthy food like carrots or spinach
	Exercise	تمرين	Activity that keeps the body fit
	Sleep	ينام	Resting at night to stay healthy
<i>Jobs</i>	Doctor	دكتور	A person who treats illnesses
	Engineer	مهندس	A person who designs and builds things
	Nurse	ممرضة	A person who cares for sick people
	Teacher	مدرس	A person who helps others learn
	Firefighter	رجل الإطفاء	A person who puts out fires
	Police officer	ضابط شرطة	A person who protects the public
	Carpenter	نجار	A person who builds with wood
	Wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية	A person who photographs animals in nature
	Voice-over actor	ممثل أصوات	A person who records voices for TV / radio
<i>Numbers</i>	Hundred	مائة	The number 100
	Billion	مليار	One thousand million (1,000,000,000)
<i>Objects</i>	Gift	هدية	A present given to someone
	Uniform	زي رسمي	Special clothes for work or school.
	Furniture	أثاث	Tables, chairs, and other home items
<i>Phonics - Long Vowels</i>	Plane	طائرة	A flying vehicle
	Plate	طبق	A flat dish for food
	Feed	يُطعم	To give food
	Home	منزل / بيت	Where you live
	Rope	حبل	A strong string
<i>Phonics - Short Vowels</i>	Hat	قبعة	A piece of clothing for the head
	Pen	قلم جاف	A tool for writing
	Pot	إناء	A round container for cooking
	Bat	خفاش / مضرب	An animal or a tool used in sports
	Pan	مقلاة / طاسة	A flat container used for frying
<i>Places</i>	School	مدرسة	A place for learning
	Library	مكتبة	A place with books and resources

Places	Post office	مكتب بريد	A place to send and receive mail
	Hospital	مستشفى	A place where doctors and nurses help people
	Bazaar	بازار / سوق	A market where goods are sold
	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	A famous desert oasis in Egypt
	Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	A tall landmark in Cairo
	Pyramids	الأهرامات	Ancient triangular Egyptian structures
Prepositions	In	في	Inside something
	On	على	Resting on the surface
	Behind	خلف	At the back of
	In front of	امام	Ahead of or before
	Next to	بجوار	Beside or near
	between	بين "الثنين"	In the middle of two things
Story Elements	Setting	مكان وزمان القصة	Where and when a story takes place
	Characters	شخصيات	People or animals in a story
	Plot	حبكة درامية	The main events of a story
Time Expressions	First	أولاً	Happening before anything else
	Then	ثم	Used to show what happens next
	After that	بعد ذلك	That used to describe the next step
	Finally	في النهاية	Used to describe the last step
Tools & Equipment	Ladder	سلم	A device for climbing
	Water hose	خرطوم ماء	A long tube for spraying water
	Tools	أدوات	Things used to fix or build things
Visual Literacy	Blog	مدونة	A short online article or post
Writing Elements	Sign	يوقع	When someone writes their name
	Title	عنوان	The name of a story or article
	Date	تاريخ	The day something is written or happens
	Writer's name	اسم الكاتب	The person who wrote the piece
	Heading	عنوان	A main title of a section
	Sub-heading	عنوان فرعي	A smaller title under a heading
	Call to action	دعوة للعمل	A phrase that encourages action (e.g., "Join us!")
	Descriptive words	كلمات وصفية	Words that tell more about a person or object
	Image	صورة	A picture to show something visually

Exam (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Ms. Mona and the students are in the school
a) library b) office c) restaurant d) garden
- Ms. Mona told the students that we have five
a) eyes b) ears c) senses d) hands
- Our senses help us understand the
a) lesson b) book c) school d) world
- Our senses also help us stay
a) kind b) safe c) unkind d) unsafe

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My sister always wore the same
a) drawings b) closet c) dress d) song
- I can books on the table.
a) see b) taste c) smell d) talk

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

carpenter – photo – photographer – dangerous – animals

My father is a very smart wildlife 1) He takes pictures of wild 2) His job is really 3) Sometimes, he waits for a very long time to get the best 4) He likes wild animals and being in nature.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

People have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. Doctors say that healthy food is very important and people should eat lots of vegetables and fruit to stay healthy and strong. They ask people to drink plenty of water and practice sports every day.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- People have meals every day.
a) five b) thirteen c) two d) three
- Doctors advise people to practice
a) sleep b) sports c) reading d) music

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why should people eat lots of vegetables and fruit?
- When do people have lunch?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- They (eats) breakfast in the morning.
- The tree is (front) the house.
- The rat is (smallest) than the dog.
- He (not play) football after school.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- i washed the plates after dinner

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The animal you like

Guiding elements:

(elephant – big – trunk – grass)

Exam (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Amr is a wildlife
a) gardener b) engineer c) photographer d) doctor
2. Amr's job is
a) bad b) boring c) interesting d) bored
3. Amr takes pictures in places.
a) near b) middle c) faraway d) opposite
4. He waits a long time to get the best
a) picture b) color c) puppet d) helmet

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I play on the in the park.
a) slide b) face c) gate d) nine
2. The is black and white.
a) monkey b) giraffe c) zebra d) elephant

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

playground – competition – happy – announce – drawings

It was time for the annual drawing competition. When it was time to

- 1) the winner, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful
- 2) of dresses. My sister won the 3) She was
- very 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When dangerous chemicals go into water bodies like seas, oceans, rivers and lakes, they cause water pollution. Water pollution can kill living things that live in the water, such as fish, birds and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The underlined word "dangerous" is the opposite of
 a) unkind b) unsafe c) unhealthy d) safe
- "Water pollution" means that water isn't
 a) healthy b) unhappy c) unhealthy d) unclear

B) Answer the following questions.

- Mention two kinds of water bodies.
- What can water pollution cause to animals?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- The red pen is the (longer) pen.
- The boy is (tall) than the girl.
- Does Sara (walks) to school every day?
- The sun (rise) in the east.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- what do pets need

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Stopping air pollution

Guiding elements:

(plant trees – walk – less plastic – bins)

Exam (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Egypt has special regions.
a) twenty b) two c) twelve d) ten
2. Upper Egypt is in the
a) south b) north c) east d) west
3. In Upper Egypt, people celebrate the cane harvest.
a) rice b) potatoes c) sugar d) orange
4. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by
a) leg b) foot c) neck d) hand

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The sun always at night.
a) illegal b) dishonest c) disappears d) dislikes
2. My house has a very big
a) gate b) health c) face d) carpenter

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

between – on – of – behind – next

I have a big living room. My family picture is 1) the wall.
My cat is 2) the blue chair. There's a lamp 3) to
the TV. There's a plant 4) a book and a notebook.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

One day, there was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. After many years of hard work, he felt tired and wanted to stop. The king asked him to build one last house as a gift to the village. He used weak wood and didn't check the windows or the doors. When the house was finished, the king said it was for him. The carpenter was shocked. He knew he had worked poorly. He felt regret and promised to always do his best.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The carpenter was
a) poor b) stupid c) skilled d) foolish
- The carpenter used wood to build the house.
a) strong b) weak c) healthy d) unhealthy

B) Answer the following questions.

- What did the king want?
- How did the carpenter feel at the end?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- She (brush) her teeth every day.
- The green shirt is (clean) than the red one.
- (Does) they watch movies on the weekend?
- Hana has the (short) hair in the group.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- mazen doesn't watch the movie

7 Write a blog about: اكتب مدونة عن:

St. Catherine Mountain

Guiding elements:

(South Sinai – colourful rocks – pictures)

By Nada

July 17, 2025

Exam (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The old lion is in the
a) home b) school c) forest d) pond
2. The lion pretends to be to trick animals.
a) sick b) big c) happy d) wise
3. The is clever.
a) giraffe b) zebra c) fox d) elephant
4. The fox stays by learning from the mistakes of others.
a) unsafe b) unhealthy c) dangerous d) safe

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My sister can play the
a) stone b) face c) flute d) gate
2. The Egyptian is full of history.
a) Museum b) Bank c) Zoo d) Hospital

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

stop – leopard – endangered – grass – pollution

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing. The Red Sea Dugong is an 1) animal in Egypt. They eat sea 2) They are in danger because of 3) and fishing nets. We need to 4) pollution.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many men in Egypt wear the galabeya. The galabeya is a long white robe. Galabeya is made from cotton. The sleeves are long so people don't get sunburned. Women wear colorful dresses. Egyptians are proud of their culture and love to celebrate their traditions together.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Galabeya is made from
a) cotton b) silk c) plastic d) paper
- In Egypt, women wear colorful
a) pants b) shorts c) dresses d) socks

B) Answer the following questions.

- What do men wear in Egypt?
- How do Egyptians feel about their culture?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- He built the (weak) house in the city.
- Mazen (don't) ride his bike to school.
- My bag is (heaviest) than his bag.
- What (do) a nurse do?

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- does the sun rise in the east

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Healthy habits

Guiding elements:

(brush – early – exercise – healthy food)

Exam (5)

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There are many different places to visit in
a) London b) Egypt c) Mexico d) China
2. At the, tourists can ride camels.
a) Cairo Tower b) River c) Pyramids d) Oasis
3. There are many in the Egyptian Museum.
a) treasures b) shoes c) food d) water
4. Tourists can buy gifts at Bazaar.
a) Cairo Tower b) Nile River c) Khan Al-Khalii d) Oasis

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Siwa has lots of trees and water.
a) Tower b) Pyramids c) Oasis d) Nile
2. A helps sick people feel better.
a) doctor b) teacher c) police officer d) vet

3

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

pretended - animals - weak - fox - visit

There was an old lion. He was 1) and couldn't hunt.
He tricked 2) to be sick in his cave. He asked animals to
3) him before he died. Many animals entered and never
returned. A wise 4) didn't go into the cave and ran away.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Sarah, Toka and Ahmed like sports. Ahmed likes football. He plays it with his friends on Friday. His team always wins. Sarah likes swimming. She goes to the swimming pool every day. Her friends like her because she is kind and clever. She helps her friends all the time. Toka is a good squash player. They are good players. They advise all people to practice sport.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Ahmed plays football with his friends on
a) Monday b) Friday c) Tuesday d) Sunday
- Toka is good at
a) football b) basketball c) squash d) tennis

B) Answer the following questions.

- What sport does Sarah like?
- Why do Sarah's friends like her?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- (Doing) your street have this problem?
- Rabbits are (healthy) than other animals.
- I (doesn't) go to school by car.
- In the afternoon, Sarah (do) her homework.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- what do lions eat

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your future job

Guiding elements:

(doctor - sick people - white coat)

Exam (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The giraffe has a long
a) mouth b) hand c) leg d) neck
2. The giraffe eats from tall trees.
a) grass b) flowers c) leaves d) meat
3. The is small and has a long tail.
a) bear b) monkey c) elephant d) lion
4. The monkey can trees.
a) run b) swim c) visit d) climb

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Egyptians used giant stones to build the
a) Pyramids b) Nile c) Oasis d) gifts
2. The doctor the health of sick people.
a) runs b) checks c) designs d) eats

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

Nile River - Oasis - Museum - Tower - Bazaar

There are many different places in Egypt. The Siwa 1)
has lots of trees and water. We can see a great view of Cairo from the top
of the Cairo 2) We can buy gifts at Khan Al-Khalili 3)
We get water from the 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The River Nile is very important for all of us. It's a very long River in Egypt. It's also the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. Farmers need water from the Nile to grow plants. People need water from the Nile for drinking and washing. A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The River Nile is very for all of us.
a) unkind b) illegal c) irresponsible d) important
- The River Nile is in
a) London b) Japan c) Egypt d) China

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why do farmers need water?
- Why is the Nile important in Egypt?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- Elephants are the (big) animals.
- Ali is (tallest) than his sister on land.
- They (wakes) up early every day.
- She doesn't (needs) to use cars every day.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- vets often check animal's health

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Our senses

Guiding elements:

(five - amazing - understand)

Exam (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My has a great job.
a) brother b) father c) sister d) mother
2. She works with
a) puppets b) tables c) computers d) cars
3. She uses puppets to tell
a) news b) stories c) films d) movies
4. She loves seeing the children's big
a) ties b) tears c) smiles d) cries

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A/An saves people from fires.
a) doctor b) engineer c) patient d) firefighter
2. Tourists can camels at the Pyramids.
a) play b) ride c) build d) go

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

lions - eat - park - elephants - visitors

My dad is a forest guide. He works at the forest 1)
At the forest park, 2) see many animals. They see 3)
drinking water. They also see the 4) that often hunt at night
and sleep during the day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name's Fady. I'm a firefighter at our local fire station. I wear a thick protective uniform with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep me safe. I use special tools, like water hoses, ladders and oxygen tanks to fight fires and save people. I ride a red fire truck. I like my job because I like saving lives and protecting my community.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Fady is a / an
a) doctor b) engineer c) firefighter d) teacher
- Fady rides a red
a) car b) fire truck c) plane d) bicycle

B) Answer the following questions.

- What tools does Fady use to fight fires?
- Why does Fady like his job?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- The lion is (strong) than the dog.
- Ali (go) to bed at 10:00 p.m.
- Sarah has the (short) hair in the group.
- Cars (doesn't) move quickly in the morning.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- this is my daily routine

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A famous place in Egypt

Guiding elements:

(Pyramids - tourists - pictures - camels)

Exam (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A daily routine helps me stay
a) unhealthy b) healthy c) safe d) unsafe
2. I wake up
a) early b) late c) quickly d) slowly
3. My breakfast includes and fruit.
a) juice b) soda c) pepsi d) milk
4. I should play every day.
a) football b) tennis c) sports d) chess

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The River is a very long river in Egypt.
a) sea b) lake c) ocean d) Nile
2. He is He always wants more than what is needed.
a) owner b) hungry c) greedy d) happy

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

puppets - characters - actor - cartoons - low

My brother has an exciting job. He is a voice-over 1)
He makes voices for 2) He can make high and 3)
voices. He makes little voices for small 4) and loud voices for
large ones.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Egypt has a nice variety of weather, although the weather is usually very dry. Alexandria is the most rainy city in Egypt. It is usually very hot in deserts. We have very hot summers and temperature can go up to 50 degrees. Our winters are cooler and temperature can go down to around 12 degrees. Tourists come from all over the world to enjoy our beautiful weather.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The main idea of the text is about the in Egypt.
a) food b) water c) places d) weather
- The weather in Egypt is usually very
a) dry b) cold c) rainy d) cloudy

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why do tourists come to Egypt?
- How is the weather in Alexandria?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- Toka (carrying) her backpack every day.
- Do they (takes) the bus to school?
- The whale is the (heavy) animal.
- Why (do) Sarah eat healthy food?

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- how can we help animals

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The teacher's job

Guiding elements:

(nice - hard - happy)

Exam (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Noha is a
a) vet b) mentor c) nurse d) teacher
2. Amr takes of animals.
a) photos b) books c) food d) water
3. Salma uses to make children laugh.
a) jokes b) stories c) puppets d) pictures
4. Adel makes voices for
a) films b) cartoons c) stories d) drawings

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A helps doctors and patients.
a) nurse b) teacher c) firefighter d) vet
2. The flies at night.
a) pet b) bat c) bear d) elephant

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

king - house - weak - wood - strong

Sami was a great carpenter. He was known for his 1) houses. The 2) asked him to build one last house. Sami used weak 3) and didn't check the windows or the door. When the 4) was finished, the king told him it was a gift for him.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Once there was an old lion who could no longer hunt. He pretended to be sick in his cave and asked animals to visit him. Many came, but none returned—he ate them all. One day, a clever fox came and saw many footprints going in but none coming out. He spoke to the lion from outside and refused to enter. The fox said, "I learn from the mistakes of others!" and ran away safely.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- The lion couldn't anymore.
a) play b) hunt c) run d) eat
- The underlined pronoun "He" refers to the
a) fox b) lion c) cave d) footprints

B) Answer the following questions.

- What happened to the animals that visited the lion?
- What's the moral of the story?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- The sun (rise) in the east.
- The boy is (tall) than the girl.
- I (eats) lunch in the afternoon.
- Our house is the (big) in our street.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- animals need our help to stay healthy

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Helping Animals

Guiding elements:

(help - elephants - birds)

Exam (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Tourists visit St. Catherine
a) Hill b) Mountain c) River d) Sea
2. They wear clothes.
a) warm b) cold c) not d) big
3. They see and plants.
a) trees b) rocks c) ponds d) cars
4. At the, they visit the monastery.
a) top b) bottom c) roof d) road

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The has a long trunk.
a) monkey b) lion c) elephant d) zebra
2. I music and voices with my ears.
a) hear b) see c) touch d) smell

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

Delta - spring - rich - grow - Upper

Egypt has two rich cultural regions: the 1) in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. In the Delta, people 2) rice and cotton, work in factories, and celebrate the 3) festival with colors and food. In 4) Egypt, people celebrate sugar cane harvest.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My neighbor Omar is a firefighter. He works at our local fire station. He wears a thick uniform and a helmet to stay safe. He checks the fire truck and equipment every day. When there is danger, he helps people. He uses tools like water hoses and ladders. Omar is proud of his job because he saves lives and protects others.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Omar works at a
a) school b) bank c) fire station d) library
- The opposite of the underlined word "safe" is
a) dangerous b) happy c) good d) fast

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is Omar's job?
- Why is Omar proud of his job?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- Hala is (fat) than Huda.
- Heba (watch) TV in the evening.
- The school is (on) the mall and the library.
- Does Zeinab (does) her homework after school?

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- sami rides his bike to school

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The Nile River

Guiding elements:

(longest - water - plant)

Exam (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Omar is a
a) nurse b) vet c) firefighter d) doctor
2. He wears protective
a) clothes b) shirts c) shoes d) hats
3. Every day, he checks his
a) pens b) tools c) cars d) books
4. He helps people by fires.
a) fighting b) breaking c) giving d) putting

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We always our street.
a) feed b) clean c) collect d) help
2. A has a long tail.
a) monkey b) bear c) giraffe d) elephant

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

played - laughed - hungry - coins - soup

Goha walked through the market. He was 1) but didn't have enough money. He enjoyed the smell of 2) outside a restaurant. The greedy owner asked him to pay. Goha shook his 3) and said, "Take the sound!" The owner 4) at Goha's clever idea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl who follows good habits every day. She wakes up early, brushes her teeth, and does exercises. She eats healthy meals with fruits and vegetables, and drinks lots of water. At school, she plays sports with her friends. In the afternoon, she helps in the garden. Sarah avoids sweets, sleeps early, and gets 9 hours of sleep. These habits help her stay strong, smart, and full of energy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Sarah plays sports with her
a) cousin b) parents c) sister d) friends
- Healthy habits help Sarah stay
a) sad b) strong c) weak d) bad

B) Answer the following questions.

- How old is Sarah?
- What does Sarah do when she wakes up?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- Firefighters (stops) fires.
- (Does) you collect trash?
- Mona's dress is the (pretty) one in the party.
- There is a bank (in) to the library.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- a doctor wears a white coat

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My favorite job

Guiding elements:

(engineer - wear - buildings)

Exam (12)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Egypt has special regions.
a) one b) two c) three d) four
2. In the, people grow rice.
a) Delta b) Upper Egypt c) Cairo d) Giza
3. They celebrate sugar cane
a) cut b) growth c) harvest d) plan
4. Egyptians are of their culture.
a) cut b) growth c) proud d) kind

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The is black and white.
a) bear b) lion c) zebra d) monkey
2. It's to hunt here.
a) illegal b) irregular c) dislike d) relevant

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.
اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

truck - uniform - ladder - hose - car

Ali is a firefighter. He wears a blue 1) and a helmet to stay safe. He checks the fire 2) every day. He uses a long water 3) to stop fires. He also has a special 4) for tall buildings.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Our city has many helpful places. Students go to school to learn, and meet friends. Hospitals have doctors and nurses who care for sick people. The post office helps people keep in touch by sending letters and packages. At the shopping mall, people buy what they need and enjoy meals. Behind the mall is a museum with old treasures. These places make life better and help us learn and grow every day.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Doctors work at the
a) mall b) hospital c) museum d) school
- At the, people buy things and enjoy meals.
a) school b) bank c) shopping mall d) school

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why do students go to school?
- Where is the museum?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- Adam is (healthy) than Ayman.
- Aya (volunteer) to help in the park every day.
- He doesn't (wears) a helmet.
- The hospital is in (next) of the school.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- what does an engineer wear

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The Pyramids

Guiding elements:

(amazing - Giza - tourists)

Exam (13)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We celebrate things in our country's
a) weather b) water c) history d) desert
2. Egypt is for its history.
a) bad b) famous c) unknown d) long
3. Egypt has rich
a) land b) cakes c) classes d) culture
4. We should be of our beautiful country.
a) sad b) proud c) happy d) sick

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I ice cream with my tongue.
a) smell b) hear c) see d) taste
2. An engineer new buildings.
a) helps b) designs c) protects d) saves

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

mistakes - came out - fox - visited - trick

An old lion pretended to be sick to catch animals. Many animals visited him and never 1) A clever 2) saw the footprints and didn't enter. He learned from others' 3) and ran away safely, laughing at the lion's 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

One morning, Goha smelled delicious soup from a restaurant but had no money to buy it. He sat outside enjoying the smell. The greedy owner asked him to pay for it. Goha shook a few coins and said, "If you want money for the smell, take the sound!" The owner laughed at Goha's clever thinking. Then he invited Goha inside, saying that good food tastes better when shared with others.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Goha smelled delicious
a) milk b) soup c) flower d) soup
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
a) smell b) coin c) restaurant d) Goha

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where did Goha sit?
- Why did the owner invite Goha inside?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- She (brush) her teeth every day..
- They (doesn't) eat fish.
- Ali is (tall) than Ahmed.
- The lion lives (on) the forest.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- he volunteers at the park on friday.

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The five senses

Guiding elements:

(see - smell - taste)

Exam (14)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Goha was
a) thirty b) hungry c) cold d) hot
2. The owner asked him to pay for the
a) smell b) touch c) hear d) taste
3. Goha shook his
a) shoes b) head c) leg d) coins
4. The owner invited Goha to share the with him.
a) cake b) water c) soup d) milk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We with our eyes.
a) hear b) see c) touch d) smell
2. I like eating every day.
a) coins b) fruit c) frogs d) flowers

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

work - photographer - happy - actor - puppets

Noha is a kind mentor who helps shy students become brave.

Amr is a 1) who takes pictures of wild animals. Salma uses 2) to make children happy. Adel is a voice-over 3) They all enjoy their jobs and make others 4) through their work.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many people visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai. They wake up early, wear warm clothes, and climb to the top. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants. At the top, they visit the old monastery and enjoy the history and beautiful nature around them.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- St. Catherine is in South
a) Cairo b) Giza c) Sinai d) Aswan
- People wear clothes.
a) warm b) thin c) dirty d) soft

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is the general idea of the text?
- What do people visit at the top?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- The table is (in) the sofa and the chair.
- (Do) Ali help his neighbors?
- The giraffe is (tall) than the zebra.
- We (sleeps) at 10:00 pm.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- where is the hospital

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Helping the community

Guiding elements:

(clean - plant - feed)

Exam (15)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Sarah is a girl.

- a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) sick

2. She up early.

- a) sleeps b) eats c) drinks d) wakes

She does

- a) cakes b) drinks c) exercises d) homework

4. She helps her mom in the

- a) kitchen b) garden c) room d) shop

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. At the, tourists can ride camels.

- a) Museum b) Nile c) Cairo Tower d) Pyramids

2. Monkeys can trees.

- a) climb b) drink c) catch d) run

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

love - house - do - gift - king

Sami, a talented carpenter, planned to retire after years of hard work. But the 1) asked him to build one last 2) Sami didn't care and built it poorly. Then he discovered that the house was a 3) for him. He felt ashamed and decided to 4) his best and fix it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many animals in the world are endangered. This means they may disappear forever. In Egypt, the Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals. There are fewer than 200 left in the wild. Their homes are being destroyed by buildings. The Red Sea Dugong is also in danger. These sea animals eat sea grass but are harmed by pollution and fishing nets. People must work to protect these special animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Many animals in the world are
a) happy b) endangered c) sleepy d) lazy
- The Arabian Leopard lives in
a) Egypt b) China c) America d) Japan

B) Answer the following questions.

- What must people do?
- What is the main idea of the text?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- I (carries) my backpack every day.
- She doesn't (watches) TV every night.
- My sister is the (nice) girl in our family.
- Heba is sitting (on) to Mona.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- the flowers are on the table

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Animals

Guiding elements:

(lions - giraffes - zebras)

Exam (16)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Sami was a skilled
a) carpenter b) teacher c) doctor d) vet
2. The asked him to build a house.
a) grandpa b) neighbor c) worker d) king
3. Sami didn't try hard and used materials.
a) strong b) weak c) good d) huge
4. The king gave him the house as a
a) tool b) money c) gift d) box

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We the monkey at the zoo.
a) feed b) collect c) celebrate d) volunteer
2. "....." is to put yourself on a surface like the ground.
a) Hunt b) Pretend c) Lie down d) Cave

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

culture - school - buy - museum - letters

Our city has schools, hospitals, and malls. Students learn at the

- 1), and doctors help people in hospitals. At the post office, we
send 2) People 3) things and eat at the mall.
The 4) teaches us about our history and culture.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

A weak old lion used a trick to get food. He pretended to be sick in his cave and called animals to visit him. Many animals went in but never came out. A smart fox saw the footprints and understood the danger. He stayed outside and escaped, saying, "I learn from others' mistakes!"

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. A weak old used a trick to get food.
a) zebra b) lion c) monkey d) fox
2. He pretended to be sick in his
a) cage b) office c) box d) cave

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Was the fox smart?
4. What happened to many animals?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. (Does) you play football in the club?
2. Dina is the (fast) girl in the class.
3. There is a book (in) the table.
4. Ahmed (study) English every day.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- i don't like pollution

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Healthy habits

Guiding elements:

(food - sleep - sports)

Exam (17)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. At , students learn and meet friends.
a) school b) post office c) supermarket d) hotel
2. take care of sick people.
a) Teachers b) Farmers c) Doctors d) Guides
3. The sends letters and packages.
a) bank b) post office c) museum d) mall
4. The museum shows
a) notebooks b) books c) treasures d) letters

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. often hunt at night and sleep during the day.
a) Lions b) Giraffes c) Monkeys d) Elephants
2. I can birds singing.
a) taste b) smell c) hear d) touch

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

Pollution - endangered - Red Sea - habitats - nets

Endangered animals are at risk of disappearing. The Arabian Leopard is one of the most 1) animals in Egypt. Fewer than 200 remain because people build houses in their 2) The 3) Dugong is also endangered. 4) and fishing nets make it hard for them to live in the sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My neighbor, Soha, is a teacher at the local school. She uses books, notebooks, and a whiteboard in her work. Every day, she teaches lessons, checks homework, and helps students learn. She works hard to make learning fun and easy. Soha helps people by educating children and preparing them for the future. Her job is very important because it builds knowledge and helps the community grow through education.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. My neighbor, Soha, is a
a) doctor b) teacher c) vet d) engineer
2. The underlined pronoun " *them* " refers to
a) Soha b) children c) lessons d) books

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Soha use in her work?
4. Why is Soha's job important?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. Aya (clean) her room every day.
2. They (doesn't) collect trash.
3. My bag is (heavy) than Ali's bag.
4. The clock is (in) the wall.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- when do the lions hunt

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My favorite animal

Guiding elements:

(giraffe - tall - eat)

Exam (18)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Nada lives in a
a) house b) apartment c) cave d) tent
2. The house is in a
a) town b) village c) city d) country
3. There are tall behind the house.
a) giraffes b) houses c) trees d) schools
4. The house is a yellow house and a brown house.
a) between b) behind c) on d) next

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The has thick fur and sharp claws. It catches fish.
a) bear b) elephant c) zebra d) fish
2. I can taste with my
a) nose b) tongue c) eyes d) ears

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

trunk - zoo - tail - strong - elephants

My name is Heba and I like animals. My favorite animals are 1)

They are big and 2) animals. They use their 3) to spray

water on their body. We can see them at the 4) They are amazing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My friend Wael likes football. He plays for our school team. Wael goes to the club to practice every Friday. Wael is very clever. He always eats healthy food and drinks fresh juice. He always sleeps at 8 o'clock. His friends like him very much.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Wael plays for our school
a) team b) house c) library d) class
2. Wael goes to the club to practice every
a) Tuesday b) Monday c) Thursday d) Friday

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Wael eat?
4. When does Wael sleep?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

1. Sarah (go) to the park every day.
2. Nora is (slow) than Ali.
3. The cat is (next) the bed and the table.
4. (Does) you want to be a police officer?

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- Ahmed and hazem are friends

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Different jobs

Guiding elements:

(doctor - engineer - teacher)

Exam (19)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My uncle is a
a) farmer b) vet c) nurse d) teacher
2. He gets up at o'clock every day.
a) three b) six c) four d) two
3. My uncle has two
a) horses b) cows c) dogs d) pens
4. He vegetables, too.
a) buys b) cuts c) grows d) cleans

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We with our nose.
a) smell b) taste c) touch d) hear
2. She clothes and gives them to poor people.
a) feeds b) eats c) helps d) collects

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

friends - basketball - cola - play - eat

I am in a football team at school. I don't drink 1) I drink water. We practice three times every week. I don't 2) video games. I play football and 3) in the park. I play with my 4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Hany. I spend my weekend at home with my family. We have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. I often help her in the kitchen. Today, we are having potatoes and chicken. It looks delicious.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Hany's cooks food for the family.
a) brother b) mother c) sister d) father
- They are having and chicken for lunch today.
a) potatoes b) pasta c) fish d) salad

B) Answer the following questions.

- How many meals do they have every day?
- What is Hany's favorite meal?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين الأقواس.

- They (goes) to the park every week.
- Hend has the (pretty) dress at the party.
- The library is next (of) the school.
- (Does) farmers grow rice?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- i live in a city called hurghada.

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your favorite animal

Guiding elements:

(bear - claws - fish)

Exam (20) خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ali is a
a) nurse b) engineer c) firefighter d) teacher
2. He wears a to stay safe.
a) helmet b) cap c) hat d) veil
3. He checks his fire every day.
a) book b) car c) bus d) truck

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

park - community - trees - trash

- Amira : Hello, Adam! What do you do to help our 1)..... ?
- Adam : Hello, Amira. I clean 2)..... from the streets with my friends.
- Amira : That's cool! Do you plant 3)..... ?
- Adam : Yes, I do. What about you?
- Amira : I volunteer at the community 4).....
- Adam : That's nice!

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many jobs in the world. The doctor checks the health of sick people. The firefighter saves people from fires. An engineer designs buildings. But my favorite job is being a teacher. Teachers do very kind and helpful work. They help young students learn and grow. I want to be a teacher when I grow up.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The writer wants to be a/an
a) doctor b) nurse c) engineer d) teacher

2. The checks sick people.
a) firefighter b) engineer c) teacher d) doctor

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does a firefighter do?
4. What does the doctor do?
5. Who designs buildings?

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I use my to hear.
a) eyes b) ears c) hands d) nose
2. His house is than mine.
a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest
3. Everyone uses trash in my community.
a) bins b) food plates c) traffic d) ground
4. Does he to work every day?
a) walks b) walk c) walked d) walking
5. I to drive here.
a) dislike b) dishonest c) illegal d) irregular

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. can - How - help - we - animals - ?

2. school - after - play - I - sports - .

3. do - exercises - Why - dogs - need - some - ?

4. lots of - and - The Siwa Oasis - trees - has - water - .

5. father - What - do - your - does - ?

Exam (21)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in Sinai.
a) South b) North c) East d) West
- Tourists wake up early to
a) run b) watch c) climb d) eat
- They wear warm clothes because it's
a) hot b) cold c) rainy d) snowy

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

sick - doctor - job - coat

- Ms. Hala : Good morning. What is your father's 1)..... ?
- Sarah : He is a 2).....
- Ms. Hala : What does he wear?
- Sarah : He wears a white 3).....
- Ms. Hala : What does he do at his job?
- Sarah : He helps 4)..... people and checks their health.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I live in a big house with my family. There are different places in my town. Young children go to school every morning to learn. They can borrow books from the library. When people feel sick, they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the shopping mall where many shops sell different things.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- I live in a house.
a) small b) tiny c) big d) narrow

Exams

2. Children go to every morning to learn.
a) school b) mall c) club d) hospital

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who did the writer live with?
4. Where do people go when they feel sick?
5. What do the shops sell?

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The cat is the box.
a) next b) front c) in d) between
2. We with our eyes.
a) listen b) see c) hear d) smell
3. Mazen his bike to school every day.
a) rides b) ride c) is riding d) ridden
4. The has a striped coat and runs in groups.
a) monkey b) bear c) elephant d) zebra
5. The school bus helps reduce
a) schools b) traffic c) bins d) ground

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. coat - wears - A doctor - white - a - .
.....
2. pond - the - The ducks - in - swim - .
.....
3. a rabbit - than - A - smaller - mouse - is - .
.....
4. you - are - How - feeling - ?
.....
5. practice - healthy - What - you - habits - do - ?
.....

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Toka is a good girl. She is ten years old. In the evening, she takes a shower and brushes her teeth. She goes to bed early at 8:30 P.m. She sleeps for 9 hours every night. Getting enough sleep helps her body stay healthy and her mind stay sharp.

Unit (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

I help my community. I clean the streets with my friends every weekend, and I also help plant trees in the park. Sometimes, I collect clothes and give them to people who need them. I feel happy when I help others!

Unit (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Once there was an old lion who couldn't hunt anymore. He was too weak to catch animals for food. So, he thought of a clever trick. The lion went into his cave and pretended to be very sick.

Unit (4)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ali is a tour guide in Egypt. He helps tourists and shows them interesting places in Egypt. The Pyramids are very nice. Tourists can take many pictures and ride camels there.

Unit (5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Amr is a wildlife photographer. He has an interesting job! He takes pictures of wild animals. "I find the biggest lions and smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in faraway places. Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture!"

Exam (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ms. Mona and the students are in the school garden. They are talking about the five senses. Ms. Mona told the students that senses help us understand the world. Our senses also help us stay safe.

Exam (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Amr is a wildlife photographer. He has an interesting job! He takes pictures of wild animals. He takes great photos in faraway places. Sometimes, he waits a long time to get the best picture.

Exam (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Egypt has two special regions: The Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. In Upper Egypt, people celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand.

Listening Texts

Exam (4)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

An old lion in the forest pretends to be sick to trick animals. But a clever fox stays safe because he learns from the mistakes of others, and this is the moral of the story.

Exam (5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

There are many different places in Egypt that tourists can visit and enjoy. At the Pyramids, tourists can ride camels and take many pictures. They can visit the Egyptian Museum to see many treasures. They can go to Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar to buy some gifts.

Exam (6)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Here are some facts about the animals. The giraffe has a long neck. It has a spotted coat. It eats leaves from tall trees. The monkey is small. It has a long tail. It climbs trees.

Exam (7)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

My sister has a great job. She works with puppets. She uses puppets to tell stories. She loves seeing children's big smiles and hearing their loud laughs. It's fun when children enjoy the show.

Exam (8)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

It's important to have a daily routine to stay healthy. I wake up early and brush my teeth. I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit. I should play sports every day.

Exam (9)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Noha is a mentor. She helps students grow and learn. Amr takes photos of animals in wild places. Salma uses puppets to make children laugh. Adel makes voices for cartoons.

Exam (10)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in Sinai. They climb early in warm clothes. On the way, they see rocks and plants. At the top, they visit the monastery and enjoy nature, history, and adventure with friends and family.

Exam (11)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Omar is a firefighter at the local fire station. He wears protective clothes and a helmet. Every day, he checks his tools and rides the fire truck with his team. He helps people by fighting fires and saving lives.

Exam (12)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Egypt has two special regions: the Delta and Upper Egypt. People in the Delta grow rice and

celebrate spring. In Upper Egypt, they celebrate the sugar cane harvest. Both regions have beautiful clothes, crafts, songs, and traditions that Egyptians are proud of their culture.

Exam (13)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

We celebrate things in our country's history. Egypt is famous for its history. Egypt has rich culture. We should be proud of our beautiful country.

Exam (14)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Goha was hungry and smelled soup from a restaurant. The owner asked him to pay for the smell. Goha shook his coins and said, "Take the sound!" The owner laughed and invited Goha to share the soup with him.

Exam (15)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Sarah is a healthy girl. She wakes up early. She does exercises. She helps her mom in the garden.

Exam (16)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Sami was a skilled carpenter. One day, the king asked him to build a house. Sami didn't try hard and used weak materials. When the king gave him the house as a gift, he regretted his careless work and fixed it later.

Exam (17)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Many places in our city help people every day. At school, students learn and meet friends. Doctors in hospitals take care of sick people.

The post office sends letters and packages. People shop and eat at the mall. The museum shows treasures and teaches us about our history.

Exam (18)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Nada lives in a house. The house is in a village. There are tall trees behind the house. The house is between a yellow house and a brown house.

Exam (19)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

My uncle is a farmer. He gets up at six o'clock every day. He has two cows. He grows vegetables, too.

Exam (20)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Ali is a firefighter. He wears a blue uniform and a helmet to stay safe. He checks the fire truck every day. He uses a long water hose to stop fires. He also has a special ladder for tall buildings.

Exam (21)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb and wear warm clothes because it's cold.

Answers of paragraphs

Unit (1)

Healthy habits

I have healthy habits. I get up early every day. I wash my face and brush my teeth. I eat lots of vegetables and fruits.

Our senses

We have five senses. They help us understand the world around us. I can see with my eyes. I can touch with my hands. I can taste with my tongue.

Unit (2)

Helping the community

I like helping my community. I do different things with my friends. We clean the street. We plant trees. We collect clothes to give to poor people.

Traditions in the Delta

In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton.

Unit (3)

Helping animals

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Each animal needs special care to live well. Vets often check their health.

The Arabian Leopard

The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. These animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

Unit (4)

The Pyramids

The Pyramids are very nice. Tourists like to visit them. They take many pictures there. They ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun.

Places in your city

The school is an important place. Students go there to learn and meet friends. Teachers help them. The library has many books to read or borrow.

Unit (5)

A Mentor

Noha is a mentor. She does very kind and helpful work! She helps young students learn and grow. She helps shy students become brave.

Puppets

Salma works with puppets. She has a great job! She uses puppets to tell stories. She does many shows for children. She loves seeing their big smiles.

Exam (1)

The animal you like

My favorite animal is the elephant. It's big and grey. It has a heavy trunk. Elephants drink lots of water. Children like watching them in the zoo.

Exam (2)

Stopping air pollution

To stop air pollution, we should plant trees in our community. We should walk or cycle to school. We should use less plastic. We should put trash in bins.

Exam (3)

St. Catherine Mountain

By Nada

July 17, 2025

It's a famous mountain. It's in South Sinai. You can see colorful rocks on your way there. You can take picture there.

Exam (4)

Healthy habits

I have many healthy habits. I get up early every day. I brush my teeth. I do lots of exercises. I eat healthy food.

Exam (5)

Your future job

My future job is to become a doctor. A doctor wears a white coat. He helps and checks sick people. It's an interesting job.

Exam (6)

Our senses

We have five senses that help us understand the world. We smell with our nose, hear with our ears, and taste with our tongue. They're amazing.

Exam (7)

A famous place in Egypt

The Pyramids are great. Many tourists like visiting them. They take pictures there. They can ride camels near them.

Exam (8)

The teacher's job

I think the teacher's job is the nicest job. A teacher. He helps students learn and do well in their exams. He feels happy when they understand every thing he explains.

Exam (9)

Helping Animals

We should help and protect animals. Elephants need bigger places to move around. Birds need clean cages. Pets need daily care from their owners.

Exam (10)

The Nile River

The Nile River is the longest river. It is very important. It provides water for drinking and washing. Farmers use its water to grow plants.

Exam (11)

My favorite job

I'm an engineer. I love my job very much. I wear a vest and a helmet to protect my head. I design new buildings.

Exam (12)

The Pyramids

The Pyramids are amazing. They are in Giza. Tourists take many pictures there. They like riding camels near them. It's fun.

Exam (13)

The five senses

We have five senses that help us understand the world. We see with our eyes, smell with our nose and taste with our tongues. We touch with our hands. We hear with our ears.

Exam (14)

Helping the community

To help the community, I clean trash from the streets with my friends every Saturday. I plant trees in the park. Sometimes, I feed the dogs and cats. I feel so happy when I give them food.

Exam (15)

Animals

Lions have yellow fur. They hunt at night. Giraffes have a spotted coat. They eat leaves from tall trees. The zebra has a striped coat and it runs in groups.

Exam (16)

Healthy habits

I have healthy habits. I wake up early. I eat healthy food. I sleep 9 hours a night. I do exercise to be fit.

Exam (17)

My favorite animal

The giraffe is my favorite animal. It has a very long neck. It eats leaves from tall trees. It has a spotted coat.

Exam (18)

Different jobs

A doctor wears a white coat. He works in a hospital. An engineer wears a vest and a helmet. He designs buildings. A teacher works in a school. He helps students learn.

Exam (19)

My favorite animal

I like animals. My favorite animal is the bear. They have sharp claws. They catch and eat fish.